

**П. ЧАМШЕДОВ, С. ХОЧАЕВА, С. ЧОМАТОВ,
К. АЛИДОДХОНОВА, Ш. КАРИМОВ,
Ф. БАРОТЗОДА, С. НАСРУДДИНОВ**

ЗАБОНИ АНГЛИСӢ

**Китоби дарсӣ барои синфи 10-уми
муассисаҳои таҳсилоти умумӣ**

**Вазорати маориф ва илми
Ҷумҳурии Тоҷикистон
тасдиқ кардааст**

**ДУШАНБЕ
МАОРИФ
2019**

УДК 373. 167. 1
ББК 81. 2 Англ. Я 72
С-34

С-34. П. Ҷамшедов, С. Хоҷаева, С. Ҷоматов, К. Алидодхонова, Ш. Каримов, Ф. Баротзода, С. Насрулдинов. **Забони англисӣ.** Китоби дарсӣ барои синфи 10-уми муассисаҳои таҳсилоти миёнаи умумӣ бо замима. Душанбе, Маориф, с. 2019, 240 сах.

Хонандагони азиз!

Китоб манбаи донишу маърифат аст. Аз он баҳравар шавед ва онро тоза нигоҳ доред! Кӯшиш кунед, ки соли таҳсили оянда ҳам ин китоб ҳамин гуна зебову ороста дастраси хонандагони дигар гардад ва онҳо низ аз он истифода баранд.

Ҷадвали истифодаи китоб

№	Ному насаби хонанда	Синф	Соли таҳсил	Ҳолати китоб (баҳои китобдор)	
				Аввали соли таҳсил	Охири соли таҳсил
1					
2					
3					
4					
5					

ISBN: 987-99947-1-228-1
Моликияти давлат

© «МАОРИФ», 2019

Dear friend,

Now you have reached the tenth form. After leaving school in spring, you will either go to work or continue your studies at some establishment of higher education. In whatever field you may work or whatever subject you may study, you will soon find that knowledge of English is either very useful or even absolutely necessary for you. That why you would do well to try and do your best during your last year at school.

As in future life most of you will need the knowledge of English to read books and articles connected with your specialty this textbook gives you much reading material.

The more you read the better you will remember the words and grammatical constructions and the easier it will be for you to understand them in texts. That is why you should read as much as possible. In the units of this textbook there are texts that are quite easy and others that are a little more difficult. Some are shorter others are longer. In some texts there are few words that are new to you, in others there are more of them.

You are expected to remember only those words that are given at the beginning of each unit. There are lots of international words in the texts the meanings of which you can understand from the spelling. These will not make the text more difficult for you.

At the beginning of each unit there are preliminary exercises. After doing these, you will find it easy to understand the new words that have been formed from words that you know already.

It will be easier for you to remember the words and grammar of the texts if you do exercises. There are many exercises in this book which you will find very helpful. Many exercises revise things that you have learnt in earlier years. By doing these you will easily remember everything.

This will make work more interesting and easier; you can discuss things and help each other.

A very important thing to remember is that one will always get a better knowledge of a language and will not forget it so easily if one also tries to speak it. The book gives you lots of suggestions for retelling in different ways the stories you read and for making dialogues on them.

If you take the trouble to do this in an amusing way, you will enjoy your English lessons much more than you otherwise would, and so will your classmates and your teacher.

Remember: Where there's a will, there's a way!

Authors

LESSON 1. SCHOOL LIFE

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен знать приведённые ниже слова, употреблять их в устной речи и составлять вопросительные предложения с этими словами.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд калимаҳои додашударо аз ёд карда, онҳоро дар нутқ истифода кунад ва бо онҳо ҷумлаҳои саволи тартиб дода тавонад.

1. In this lesson you will learn the following words. На этом уроке вы учите следующие слова. Дар ин дарс шумо калимаҳои зеринро меомӯzed.

glasses [ˈglɑːsɪz] – ?

wise [waɪz] – ?

dad [dæd] – ?

Switzerland [ˈswɪts(ə)lənd] – ?

beside [biˈsaɪd] – ?

dressmaker [ˈdresˌmeɪkə] – ?

maybe [ˈmeɪbi] – ?

be pleased [biː pliːzd] – ?

turn [tɜːn] – ?

lovely [ˈlʌvli] – ?

touch [tʌtʃ] – алоқа; связь

safe [seɪf] – бехатар; безопасность

whatever [wətˈevə] – ҳар вақте ки; когда бы ни; любой

absolutely [ˈæbs(ə)ˈluːtli] – коми-лан; абсолютно; совершенно

speciality [speʃiˈæləti] – ихтисос, специальность, профессия

construction [kənˈstrʌkʃ(ə)n] – сохтор, конструкция

connect [kəˈnekt] – пайваст; соединять, связывать

sad [sæd] – ғамгин; печальный, грустный

remark [riˈmaːk] – эрод; замечание

mind [maɪnd] – ақида; мнение

sign [saɪn] – имзо кардан; под-писать

immediately [ɪˈmiːdiəti] – фав-ран; немедленно

exclaim [ɪksˈkleɪm] – эълон

cardan [ˈkɑːdʌn] – кардан; провозглашать

mutter [ˈmʌtə] – кор; дело

preliminary [priˈlɪmɪn(ə)rɪ] – аввала, нахуст; ознакоми-тельные

form [fɔːm] – шакл, намуд,

forma helpful [ˈhelpfʊl] – ғоидаовар, полезный

revise [riˈvaɪz] – такроп, санҷиш; повторять, сверка, проверять

pair [peə] – ҷуфт, пара

anxious [ˈæŋ(k)ʃəs] – изтироб;
волнение

spelling [ˈspeliŋ] – талаффуз;
произношение

A SURPRISE FOR MR. SCHNEIDER

Rupert Baker put on his glasses and sat down to read the newspaper. It was nearly time for dinner, but his son was not yet back from school.

“Why is Peter so late this evening?” he asked his wife.

“I don’t know, dear. He usually gets home at five o’clock, and now it’s nearly half past seven. Perhaps he has a new girl-friend.”

Mr Baker did not like some of Peter’s girl-friends, but he was too wise to say so. The boy worked hard at school and gave no trouble at home. At seventeen he was old enough to take care of himself. Just then the door opened, and Peter came in.

“I’m sorry to be late, Dad. I was selling tickets for the school dance tomorrow night.”

“School dance? That’s something new. Why are you having a dance now?”

“There’s a school in Switzerland for children who have no fathers or mothers. They come from many countries, and the school is their home. Mr Schneider, our new German teacher told us about it. Look at these.” He pulled sortie pictures out of his schoolbag and began to show them to his father.

“Come along, you two,” Mrs Baker called from the next room. “Come and have your dinner before it gets cold”

Peter took the pictures with him to the dinner table. He sat down beside his father and went on talking. “Mr Schneider was at that school himself when he was a boy. He was very happy there and he wants us to do something to help. We are selling dance tickets for one pound each. All the money will go to the school in Switzerland.”

“You want me to buy two tickets, I suppose?” said Mr Baker, laughing.

“Yes. And I want you to sell some tickets too, Dad.”

Mr Baker stopped laughing. “I can’t do that. I’m much too busy. Why can’t you do it all yourself?”

“Each boy has to sell the tickets to people who live in his own road. I called at every house, but at number 17 and 28 nobody answered

the door. I have to go to school tomorrow, but you don't work on Saturdays, so you can try these houses in the morning."

"Number 17? That's my dressmaker's house," said his mother. "I go and see her for you. Maybe she will buy a ticket."

"That leaves me with number 28," Mr Baker did not seem very pleased. "It's that old house, with a high wall round the garden, isn't it? There's something strange about the place. A man called Tailor lives there with his wife. I've never seen them, because they never go out. Their servant buys everything for them in the shops, and he isn't English. I spoke to him once but he didn't understand me."

His son looked at him and laughed. "You're not afraid, are you?"

"Of course I'm not." Now he had to go. "I'll be glad to meet Mr Tailor. Give me the tickets."

Next morning when his wife was shopping, Mr Baker went down the road to number 28. He tried the front door first, but nobody came to open it. Then he walked round the house to the back door.

Before he reached it, he noticed a man and a woman sitting in the garden. They both had white hair, like very old people. The man had only one arm.

"What do you want, please?" he called.

At first Mr Baker was too surprised to answer. The man's voice seemed quite young, and it was not an English voice.

"I'm selling tickets for a dance" Mr Baker wanted to run away. How could he sell dance-tickets to a man with only one arm? But it was too late to turn back now. He had to go on. "It's to help a school in Switzerland for children with no mothers and fathers."

He walked over to their chairs, and the man looked at the tickets. Then he looked at his wife. She had a lovely face, but it was sad and deeply lined.



"Yes," he said at last, speaking very slowly. "I will buy two tickets. We do not dance, but we will help the children."

Mr Baker thanked him and went home. Soon his wife came back from the shops.

"You needn't go to number 28," she remarked. "My dressmaker is away in London. But I met the

servant from number 28 in the flower shop, and he bought my two tickets for Mr and Mrs Tailor.”

Mr Baker was not surprised. When his wife wanted to do something, like selling tickets for a dance, nobody could stop her. Peter often said that his mother could talk the back leg off a donkey. Few people were strong-minded enough to say ‘no’ to her.

“You don’t look very pleased, dear. Have I done the wrong thing?” “Yes, Mr Tailor now has four tickets.” He told her about his visit to number 28. “I’m not going back there. Mr Tailor will be angry. Peter must go and see them about it when he comes home. I’ve had enough.”

Mr Baker did not like trouble. He put on his oldest clothes and went out to work in the garden.

Mr Baker did not like trouble. He put on his oldest clothes and went out to work in the garden.

Peter was busy at school, helping Mr Schneider to get everything ready for the dance. He did not return home until late in the afternoon.

“I can’t go now, Dad,” he said when his father had told him about Mr Tailor’s tickets. “If he comes to the dance, I’ll see him there. If he doesn’t, I’ll call at his house tomorrow.”

The Bakers could not see any sign of Mr Tailor when they got to the dance. There were several hundred people there. It was almost impossible to move round the room. Peter immediately found a girl he knew and began to dance with her, but his father and mother felt too old for this kind of dancing. They sat down at a small table and watched.

When the music stopped, Peter brought them something to drink. Then Mrs Baker noticed something.

“Look!” she exclaimed. “There’s a man with one arm on the other side of the room. He has a lady with him, and they’re both white-haired. They must be your people from number 28, Rupert.” Yes, and they’re talking to Mr Schneider,” said Peter.

“And they’re talking so noisily that everyone is looking at them,” said his father. “They must be very angry.”

The music started again, and they could not see across the room any more because of the dancers. But Mr Schneider and the two white-haired people were walking round the room to-wards them.

“Here comes trouble,” Mr Baker muttered anxiously, touching his tie uneasily. “Oh, why did we come here? Everyone will hear about it now.”

He stopped and stood up in surprise as they reached his table. The German teacher and Mr Tailor were laughing, but Mrs Tailor was crying. He gave her his chair.

"I'm very, very sorry," began Mr Baker, but Hans Schneider stopped him. He looked young to be a teacher and he had a friendly face.

"There's nothing to be sorry about, Mr Baker. This is the happiest day of my life. And I have to thank you for that."

Mr Baker stood there with his mouth open, but said nothing. He could not understand anything at all. Then the white-haired man spoke.

"My good friend," he said in his slow, heavy English, "today you have given us back our son!"

"Your son? But – I don't understand."

"Hans Schneider is our son, Mr Baker. He was one year old when the war started. I was a soldier, and my wife was working in Berlin. In 1944 she sent Hans to live with our friends in the country, as it wasn't safe in Berlin. We never saw him again."

He put his one arm round his wife. She was not crying now, but her face looked more sad and tired than ever.

"My wife and I were taken prisoners. After four years we were set free, but all our friends in Germany were dead. We could not find Hans."

"But why do you have different names?"

"Oh, it's quite simple," said Mr Tailor. "Many people change their names when they come to live in England. And so did we.»

1. Read the following poem. Прочитайте следующее стихотворение. Шеърӣ зеринро хонед

Off To School

Up and away leaves flutter today,
And scurry away, and flurry away,
While all the children hurry away
Off to school today!
Up and around leaves whirl from the ground,
And rustle around anti bustle around,
While all the children hustle around,
Off to school today!

2. Translate into Tajik or Russian the words in bold type. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык слова, выделенные жирным

шрифтом. Калимаҳои сиёҳкардашударо ба забони тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. A person who does not see well must wear glasses. My grandmother is over seventy, but she can still read without glasses. Mr. Baker put on his glasses and sat down to read the newspapers. He took off his glasses when he finished reading.

2. A wise person has much experience and knowledge. It is easy to be wise after the event. After something has happened it is easy to know things that one did not understand before.

3. 'Dad' means 'father' in children's language. "I'm sorry to be late, Dad," Peter said to his father.

4. Switzerland is a small country in Europe. It is famous for its mountains – the Alps. Its capital is Bern.

5. The boy sat down beside his father. The boy sat down by his father's side.

6. A dressmaker is a woman who earns her living by making women's dresses. I had a new dress made at the dressmaker's.

7. Maybe she will buy a ticket. Perhaps she will buy a ticket.

8. The girl was pleased with her present. The girl liked her present very much.

9. 'Turn' means to take another direction. She turned her head and looked back. It was too late to turn back now. It was too late to go back now.

10. 'Lovely' means beautiful or pleasant. Jane is a good singer, she has a lovely voice. My mother is very beautiful, she has a lovely face.

11. We are sad when something goes wrong, when we are unhappy.

12. A strong-minded person always does what he has decided to do. Weak-minded people are easily influenced by other people.

13 To remark is to say. A remark is something that somebody says. The girl remarked that it was cold in the stadium. Everybody laughed at the funny remark.

14. Immediately means at once. He fell down and immediately tried to get up again. When I rang the bell, Auntie immediately answered the door.

15. A sign is a mark or a movement of the hand, head, etc. used instead of words. He made signs to me to come nearer.

16. To exclaim means to cry out suddenly and loudly in anger, surprise, etc. "Look! There he is!" she exclaimed.

17. To mutter means to speak in a low voice and not clearly so that people cannot understand what is said. He muttered something to himself, but we could not understand what it was.

18. An anxious person is very much worried about something. The mother was anxious about her son's progress. She was greatly worried and afraid that he might not do well at school.

19. Mr Baker nervously touched his tie. Mr Baker put his hand to his tie. Suddenly I felt somebody touch me on the shoulder. The mountains were so high that they seemed to touch the clouds.

20. Safe means free from danger. In 1944 they sent Hans to live in the country as it was not safe in Berlin.

3. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли фъълҳои зеринро диҳед.

put, sit, read, be, know, get, have, do, say, pay, give, take, sell, tell, begin, show, stand, have, stay, spend, swim, rent, think, let, hold, drive, run, make, leave, see, ring, rise.

4. Say quickly after the model. Use the words in exercise Model: A Swiss comes from Switzerland. A Frenchman comes ... etc. Скажите быстро по данному образцу и. Используйте слова из упражнения

4. Образец: швейцарец приезжает из Швейцарии. Француз приезжает... и так далее. Зуд баъди намуна гӯед. Калимаҳоро аз супориши 4. истифода баред. Намуна: шахси шветсариягӣ аз Шветсария меояд. Шахси франсузӣ аз... меояд ва ғайраҳо.

Switzerland [ˈswɪts(ə)lənd]	a Swiss
France [fraːns]	a Frenchman
Italy [ˈɪt(ə)li]	an Italian
Germany [dʒəːməni]	a German
Japan [dʒəˈpæn]	a Japanese
Sweden [ˈswiːd(ə)n]	a Swede
Australia [ɒsˈtreɪljə]	an Australian
New Zealand [njuːˈziːlənd]	a New Zealander
Finland [ˈfɪnlənd]	a Finn
Spain [speɪn]	a Spaniard
The United States [juːˈnaɪtɪdˈsterts]	an American

5. Read and translate. Прочитайте и переведите. Хонед ва тарҷума кунед.

A Dialogue

What Did You Do In Summer?

It is the second day back at school. Girls and boys are standing in small groups in the play ground talking about their holidays. A lot has happened and now they all have very many things to tell each other.

Lola: We had a friend staying with us and we travelled a lot about Tajikistan. We spent two weeks at Pamirs during Dad's holiday. The weather was fine all the time and I could go swimming almost every day. We lived in a lovely cottage at the seaside.

Shodi: Did you sail too? We took a cottage near Darvaz on the west. Sometimes my friend took us for a climbing. We also went climbing in one of the mountain when my uncle could come with us. I think I am quite a good climber now.

Nekruz: Girls, I wouldn't let you hold the rudder for a moment. I spent a whole month at my uncle's on a collective farm. I drove the tractor and worked in the fields. I like running and rowing, and in the evenings I often trained hard. I'm sure I'll get into the basketball team now.

Masrur: That's what you think, Mirzo. Remember there'll be other boys too.

Lola: I worked, too. I did baby-sitting on a good many Fridays and Saturdays when my sister and her husband went to parties with other holidaymakers or left for town in the evenings. It wasn't as hard as hay-making or mowing the lawn, but still it was work, that too, and I liked it.

Salim: We drove Kulob and Vanj. Our little car was quite a sight with the four of us inside and all the camping things on top. It was the most exciting holiday that I've ever had. Next year we are going to make a trip to Khujand and Samarqand.

Rustam: My Dad went there last summer. He says those cities are very beautiful. He brought back hundreds of wonderful colour pictures of the sights he saw there.

Mohru: Wasn't that the bell ringing? Let's hurry in. Mirzo has told me the new Chemistry teacher always comes into the classroom together with the bell.

6. Speak about. Расскажите о следующем. Дар борааш накл кунед.

1. Lola's, Shodi's, Nekruz's, Salim's holidays.
2. Your (your friend's) holidays.

3. Do you enjoy hiking? Tell about an interesting hiking experience.
4. Why do people go to the seaside?
5. What kind of seaside place do you like most?
6. How do some holidaymakers spoil the countryside?

7. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

He was too wise to say so. 2. At seventeen he was old enough to take care of himself. 3. He wants us to do something to help. 4. I'm much too busy. 5. People who live in his own road. 6. I'll go and see her for you. 7. Children with no mothers and fathers, 8. Few people were strong-minded enough to say 'no' to her. 9. He did not return home until late in the afternoon. 10. He looked young to be a teacher. 11. Mr. Salim stood there with his mouth open. 12. It wasn't safe in Berlin. 13. So did us.

8. Give the missing question word and ask your classmates to answer these questions. Впишите пробужденное вопросительное слово и попросите ваших одноклассников ответить на эти вопросы. Калимаҳои саволи партофташударо гузоред ва аз ҳамсинфонатон хохиш кунед, ки ба саволҳо ҷавоб диҳанд.

- A. 1. ...did Rupert Baker put on his glasses?
2. ...was his son?
3. ...had Peter been selling?
- 4.... was Mr Schneider?
- 5... had Mr Schneider been to a school in Switzerland?
- 6 ... did the dance tickets cost?
7. ...did Peter want his father to call at number 28?
8. ...bought everything for the Tailors?
9. ...could Mr. Baker not refuse to go to number 28?

- B. 1.... did he find the Tailors?
2. ... was wrong with Mr Tailor's arm?
3. ... was Mrs Tailor's face like?
4. ... was her hair like?
5. ... did Mr Tailor speak?
6. ... did it happen that the Tailors got four tickets?
7. ... did the Tailors not find their son after the war ended?
8. ... did the parents and the son have different names?

9. Say in other words. Скажите другими словами. Бо таври дигар баён кунед.

a) Model: a walk without an aim — an aimless walk

1. Children with no mother, 2. a man without a hat, 3. a dressmaker with no children, 4. a person with no home.

b) Model: a girl with green clothes — a green-clothed girl

1. a woman with white hair, 2. a boy with blue eyes, 3. a man with long legs, 4. a gentleman with a black coat.

10. Find in the text other words for those in spaced type. Замените выделенные слова другими словами из текста. Ба ҷои калимаҳои ҷудоғардида калимаи дигарро аз матн ёбед.

1. Mr Baker's son had not arrived from school yet.
2. It's almost time for dinner.
3. Maybe he has a new girl-friend.
4. He is old enough to look after himself.
5. There's a school in Switzerland for fatherless children.
6. Peter continued talking.
7. He attended that school himself.
8. I think you want me to buy some tickets.
9. I can't sell any tickets; I've got too much work just now.
10. Their servant does the shopping for them.
11. I'll be pleased to meet him.
12. He saw two white-haired people sitting in the garden.
13. He was too surprised to reply.
14. Peter helped his teacher to prepare everything for the dance.

11. Use the correct preposition where necessary. Вставьте пробужденные предлоги. Дар ҷои лозима пешояндҳои мувофиқро гузоред.

1. ... 1944 he was sent to live his friends .. . the country,
I was afraid to tell ... him that everybody would hear ... it soon.
3. They sat down ... a small table for they felt they were too old ...
this kind ... dancing.
4. I saw that the dressmaker was sitting.. . her
sister who was looking anxiously . . . me.
5. He muttered something.
.. himself ... a soft voice.
6. Father put ... his glasses and looked ... my
drawing, he seemed pleased.
7. Maybe Dad had gone ... the cinema
... his friend.
8. When they turned ... me, I saw ... their faces that they

were pleased ... my lovely hat. 9. When I was told that I was not to read glasses, I immediately went and bought myself new glasses. She exclaimed that there was something strange ... the place.

12. By whom and when were the following words said? Кем и когда были сказаны следующие слова? Аз тарафи кӣ ва кай ин калимаҳо гуфта шуд?

1. Why is Lola so late this evening?
2. I called at every house, but at number 17 and number 28 nobody answered the door.
3. I'll be glad to meet Mr. Tailor. Give me the tickets.
4. We do not dance, but we will help the children.
5. Have I done the wrong thing?
6. Here comes trouble!
7. This is the happiest day of my life.
8. But why do you have a different name?

13. Find in the text the sentences that describe or characterize. Найдите в тексте предложения, которые описывают или характеризуют следующих людей. Дар матн ҷумлаҳои оғӯд, ки тасвир ё тавсиф мекунанд .

- a) Mr. Baker, b) Mrs. Baker, c) Mr. Tailor, d) Mrs. Tailor.

14. Make up a plan and retell the story. Составьте план рассказа и перескажите по нему историю. Нақшаи ҳикояро созад ва баъдан онро нақл кунед.

15. Retell the text from the point of view of. Перескажите текст с точки зрения следующих персонажей. Матнро аз нуқтаи назари нақл кунед.

- 1) Peter Baker, 2) Mrs. Baker, 3) Mr Baker, 4) Mr. Tailor, 5) Mr. Schneir.

16. Make up a dialogue between. Составьте диалог между следующими персонажами. Дар байни... муколама тартиб диҳед:

- 1) Mr. Baker and Mr. Tailor, 2) Mr. Tailor and Mr. Schneider,
- 3) Mrs. Baker and her dressmaker, 4) Mrs. Baker and Mr. Tailor's servant, 5) Mr. Tailor and his servant, 6). Peter Baker and his parents,
- 7) Mr. and Mrs. Baker the school dance.

17. Speak about. Расскажите о оследующемы в вашей школе.
Дар бораи... нақл кунед.

- 1) your classroom;
- 2) your English lab,
- 3) your school,
- 4) your school clubs and hobby circles,
- 5) your Y.C.L. activities,

18. Talk on the following topics. Поговорите на эти темы. Оиди мавзӯҳои зерин мусоҳиба гузаронед.

Why I like or dislike cycling.

Advice to somebody who wants to go

a) on a walking holiday, b) touring by bus in another republic, c) boating along a river or a lake.

Why a town or district in our country is popular with tourists and holiday makers.

19. Dictionary Exercise - Упражнение по Словарю.

In each of the following lines there is one word meaning the same as, and the meaning the opposite of the word in capital letters. Find and translate them into Tajik or Russian. В каждой из следующих строк есть одно слово, написанное по смыслу заглавными буквами. Найдите и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Дар ҳар як қаторҳои зерин калимаҳои мавҷуданд, ки ҳаммаъно ва ё зидмаъноии калимаи бо ҳарфи калон навишташуда мебошад. Онҳоро ёбед ва ба забонҳои тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

OUGHT gave, sold, loaned, purchased, wanted

CAFE strong, secure, absent, dangerous, clean

REMEMBER learn, recollect, observe, forget, fulfil

RISE brave, respectable, sensible, stupid, and honest

Jokes

– Do you know who likes the proverb ‘Two heads are better than one’?

No, I don’t.

The barber.

*

Teacher: What’s wrong in the sentence ‘Lola didn’t go to the library yesterday as she had had a birthday’.

Student: If the sentence which had 'had had' had had 'had', it would have been correct.

*

Teacher: Nekruz what is a cannibal?

Nekruz: I don't know, sir.

Teacher: Well, if you ate your father and mother, what would you be?

Nekruz: Orphan, sir.

*

- When I was at school, I always had a five in History and you have only a four. Why is it?

- You see, grandfather, when you were at school, History was much shorter.

*

A small boy returned home from school and told his father that he was second in his class. Top place was held by a girl.

"Surely, John," said his father, "you're not going to be beaten by a mere girl."

"Well, you see, father," explained John, "girls are not so mere as they used to be."

Proverbs

1. A little learning is a dangerous thing.
2. A good beginning is half the battle.
3. The more haste, the less speed.
4. Practice is the best of instructors.
5. He who makes no mistakes, makes nothing.
6. Make hay while the sun shines.
7. Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
8. He who is willing is able.
9. He has an old head on young shoulder.
10. A word is enough to the wise.
11. All is well that ends well.

Sayings

There are books of which the backs and covers are by far the best part. (Charles Dickens)

It is better to understand a little than to misunderstand a lot. (Anatole France)

A room without books is a body without a soul. (Cicero)

The roots of education are bitter, but the fruit is sweet. (Aristotle)

Easy Reading

20. Guess the meanings of the following words and then read the text. Объясните значение следующих слов, а затем прочитайте текст. Мазмуни калимаҳои зеринро ёбед ва матнро хонед.

Chap [ʃæp] = fellow excuse me [ɪk'skju:z] – I'm sorry

A Dance at the Old School

John wanted to take Betty to a dance in the big hall of his old school.

“Wear that lovely short skirt you bought yesterday,” said John.

“No,” said Betty. “I don't like short skirts for dances. I'm going to wear my long dress.”

“All right,” said John. “I was going to wear my new jacket and the white shirt you bought me. Now I'll wear my suit in-stead.”

When they reached the hall, they saw that most of the girls were wearing short dresses. Only four boys were wearing suits. “I told you so,” John remarked rather angrily.

The dance had already started. Some of the teachers were there, with their wives. A group of boys had formed a band. They played rather badly, but they made a lot of noise, John and Betty danced two dances together. Then there was a Waltz.

“Excuse me”.

“I hate these dances,” John said. “Let's sit this one – out.

“No,” said Betty. “I like “Excuse me” dances. You meet interesting people.” They started to dance. Suddenly a boy touched John on the shoulder. “Excuse me,” he said. It was George.

“Oh, go away, George,” said John.

“No, I won't!” said George. “Another chap has taken Mary away from me. So I'm going to take Betty away from you.”

“Sorry, John,” said Betty. “I can't say no, can I? We'll have the next dance together.”

“All right,” muttered John and went away to look for Mary. She was dancing with a very short man. “Excuse me,” said John and took Mary away. He enjoyed his dance with her, but he did not ask her again. Mary was a better dancer than Betty, but John liked Betty better.

The next dance was a “Leap Year” quickstep. In “Leap Year” dances the girls ask the boys, not the boys the girls. The band started to play. At the same time somebody turned off most of the lights. John

looked for Betty, but he could see no sign of her anywhere. “She is dancing with somebody else,” he thought bitterly. She had already spoken about “Leap Year” dances. “I won’t ask you,” she had told him. “I’ll ask somebody else – somebody I don’t know. Girls don’t often get that chance.”

Suddenly he saw her. She was dancing with another man, and she was smiling and talking brightly. John could not see very well, but as the man was wearing glasses he was sure it was George.

John was very angry indeed. He rushed forward, took the man’s arm and pulled him away from Betty. “She promised me this dance, you.... Then he stopped. He had made a mistake. It was not George. It was the headmaster.

21. Complete the following sentences. Дополните следующие предложения. Цумлахон зеринро пурра кунед.

1. John wanted to take ... (Mary, Betty, Nelly) to a dance
2. The dance was ... (at the theatre, at his club, at his old school)
3. Betty wanted to wear a ... (short skirt, long dress, new blouse)
4. At the party most of the girls were wearing. . (long dresses, midi dresses, short dresses);
5. (Everybody, John, Betty) ... liked “Excuse me” dances.
6. George was at the party with . . . (Nelly, Mary, Betty).
7. The band played ... (rather badly, very well, some dances).
8. Betty asked ... (George, the headmaster, John) for the “Leap Year” quickstep.

Dictionary

Waltz
Alt out
Chao
Leap

22. Read with a dictionary. Читайте со словарем. Бо луғат хонед.

Guess the meanings of the following words and expressions and then read the text with the help of a dictionary. Найдите значение следующих слов и словосочетаний, а затем прочитайте текст с помощью словаря. Маънии калимаҳо ё ибораҳоро бо ёрии луғат ёбед ва баъдан матнро хонед.

incident [ˈɪnsɪd(ə)nt]	to make one's way towards the door = to go towards the door
inspector [ɪnˈspektə]	to pull somebody's leg = to make a fool of somebody
ministry [ˈmɪnɪstri]	so far = till now
corridor [ˈkɒrɪdɔː]	
brightly [ˈbraɪtli]	
chance [tʃɑːns] = opportunity	

The Gordian knot

The following incident took place at a school in a small village in Wales.

One day an inspector came from the Ministry of Education and wanted to visit the place. After he had had a short talk with the headmaster about the school, he went to watch a history lesson.

“Now, Mr Jones,” he said, addressing the history teacher, “could you show me the best history pupil in your class?”

The teacher did as he was asked and the inspector looked kindly at the boy and said, “Now, young man, could you tell me please, who cut the Gordian Knot?”

The boy looked at the inspector in great fear and answered in a trembling voice, “I didn’t do it, sir. I never even saw the knot!” This was rather an unexpected answer. The inspector’s face went red. He turned to the teacher, saying, “Surely this must be a joke, Mr Jones, and rather a silly one. The boy is pulling my leg! Didn’t I tell you to show me the best boy in your class? You heard the answer he gave me, didn’t you?”

“Of course, Sir,” answered the teacher. “And I must say that I’ve known him for years and his parents as well. And I know that he never tells lies! If the boy tells you he didn’t cut the Gordian Knot, I could swear he didn’t.”

Hearing this, the inspector became very angry. He quickly took his walking stick and made his way heavily to the door. He pushed, opened it, rushed down the corridor to the headmaster’s study.

“I asked Mr Jones to show me the best history pupil,” the inspector told the headmaster. “I asked the boy to tell me who had cut the Gordian Knot. He answered that he hadn’t and then the teacher added that the boy never told lies. Can you explain that?”

“I have never liked Mr Jones,” answered the headmaster, “lie’s been here for years but I haven’t been able to make friends with him so far!”

And then, leaning across the table, he whispered in a low voice, “I could swear this rascal Jones cut the damn knot himself. Don’t worry; I’ll make him pay through the nose for the thing!»

True / False. Правильно / Неправильно. Дуруст/Нодуруст

1. The incident took place in Scotland.
2. The inspector went to a history lesson at a small village school.
3. He had a talk with the worst history pupil in the class.
4. The boy told the inspector that he had never seen the Gordian Knot.
5. The boy’s answer was rather unexpected.
6. The teacher told the inspector that the boy never told lies.
7. The inspector was quite pleased with the teacher.
8. The headmaster did not know Mr Jones well because he had been there only a year.
9. The headmaster was sure that Mr Jones himself had cut the Gordian Knot.
10. Everybody at that school was pulling the inspector’s leg.

LESSON 2: HEALTH

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words..

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать перево-дить, пере-сказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда та-вонад

strawberry [ˈstrɔ:b(ə)ri]
evident [ˈevid(ə)nt]
appearance [əˈpiə(ə)ns]
public [ˈpʌblik]
guide [gaɪd]
excellent [ˈeks(ə)l(ə)nt]
restaurant [ˈrest(ə)rɔ:ŋ]
efficient [əˈfiʃ(ə)nt]
sunset [ˈsʌnset]
pale [peɪl]
asleep [əˈsli:p]

roof [ru:f]
disappear [disəˈpiə]
excuse [ɪkˈskju:z]
cool [ku:l]
drop [drɒp]
secret [ˈsi:krit]
message [ˈmesɪdʒ]
health [helθ]
expensive [ɪkˈspensɪv]
proud [praʊd]

TWO GENTLEMEN OF VERONA

We were driving from Switzerland toward the lovely old Italian city of Verona. Just outside the city two small boys stopped us. They were selling **strawberries** that looked delicious.

“Don’t buy them,” our driver said. “You’ll find better strawberries in Verona.” **Evidently** he did not like their **appearance**.

My friend spoke to the boys and found that they were brothers. Niccolo was 13, Jacopo, the smaller one, was almost 12. We bought their biggest **basket of strawberries** and then continued toward Verona.

The next morning, coming out of our hotel, we saw the two boys again. They were beside the fountain in the **public** square, shining the shoes of men who passed by. They were very busy, but they said hello to us in a friendly way.

“I thought you sold strawberries,” I said.

“We do many things, sir,” Niccolo answered seriously. He looked at us hopefully. “We sometimes **guide** people through the city, showing them places of interest.»

“**Excellent**,” I smiled. “You can guide us.”

In the week that followed we saw Niccolo and Jacopo several times a day. If we wanted American cigarettes, or tickets for the opera, or the name of a good **restaurant**, Niccolo and Jacopo were always there to help us. They worked all day under the hot summer sun, shining shoes, selling fruit and newspapers, guiding people through the city. They were always dependable, always **efficient** and always busy.

One night after **sunset** I saw them alone in the windy square. Niccolo was sitting on the ground beside the fountain. His face looked **pale** and tired. Jacopo was **asleep**, with his head on his brother’s shoulder.

“Why aren’t you at home?” I asked.

“We are waiting for the last bus,” they said. “We will sell our newspapers when it comes.”

The next morning, while Niccolo was shining my shoes, I said: “You and Jacopo work very hard. How do you spend your money?”

“We have plans, sir,” they said.

“Well,” I said. “We are leaving Verona on Monday. Can I do anything for you before we go?”

“Every Sunday we go to a village not far from Verona,” Niccolo began. “We usually go there by bus; but tomorrow, sir, maybe you will take us in your car.”

"I'll drive you there myself," I said. My driver did not work on Sundays.

In the village we stopped in front of a lovely big house with a red roof and a high stone wall.

"We will not be here long, sir. Not more than an hour." And the boys **disappeared** around the corner of the wall.

I waited a few minutes, and then followed the boys.

"**Excuse me,**" I said to a nurse who came to the door. "I just brought two small boys here."

"Ah, yes!" she exclaimed with a smile. "Niccolo and Jacopo. Please, come in."

She led me through the beautiful and cool rooms of a hospital.

At the door of one room we looked inside. The two boys when sitting beside the bed of a girl who looked about twenty years old. It was easy to see that they were her brothers because she looked so much like them.

As we walked back through the cool rooms of that lovely hospital, the nurse said, "Niccolo and Jacopo are alone in the world, except for their sister Lucia. Their mother died when they were very young. Their father, a famous opera singer, died in early years of the war. Then bombs were dropped on Verona boys and their sister lived in the streets of Verona because not a wall was standing in their house. When the enemy came, the boys began to carry secret messages across the mountains to the troops who were trying to free Verona. The boys lived in the mountains, coming and going through the night with secret messages in their shoes. They were anxious about their sister in the city."

"When the war ended," the nurse continued, "the boys came back to Verona to find their sister. They found her suffering from very poor health. She was ill with tuberculosis, because her life had been very hard during the war. Immediately they brought her here and asked us to take her into the hospital. Of course, everything is very expensive now. We must ask the people in our hospital to pay. But every week the boys come to pay us."

I thanked the nurse and waited outside, just thinking until the boys came back to the car. Then I drove with them to the city. They sat beside me quietly, looking serious and proud, those two gentlemen of Verona.

1. Use the following verbs in your own sentences. Исполните следующие глаголы своих в предложение. Феълҳои зеринро дар ҷумлаҳои худ истифода баред .

drive, stop, be, sell, say, pay, found, find, do, speak, buy, go, come, see, shine, think, guide, show, want, sit, sleep, wait, die, spend, have, begin, take, bring, lead, read, try, fly

2. Put in the correct prefixes. Consult a dictionary, if necessary. Истифода кунед префиксҳои лозима. При необходимости обратитесь к словарю. Пешваҳои мувофиқро гузоред. Дар ҳолати лозима аз луғат истифода баред.

Model: What is not usual is unusual, not possible is impossible, etc.
kind, efficient, expensive, perfect, expected, important, certain, known, developed, personal, correct

3. Translate the words in bold type. Переведите слова, выделенные жирным шрифтом. Калимаҳои ҷориро тарҷума кунед.

1. **Strawberries** are sweet. Red berries grow on the ground in gardens and forests. Garden **strawberries** are much bigger than those growing in the forest.

2. What is **evident** is clearly seen or understood. **Evidently** he didn't like the strawberries. It was clear that he didn't like the strawberries.

3. The man has a foreign **appearance**. The man looks foreign he has a foreign look. I did not like the **appearance** of the strawberries. The strawberries did not look good.

4. A **public** place is a place where everybody can go. A new **public** library has been built in our town.

5. When you take somebody to a place, you **guide** him to that place. **Guides** show tourists the sights of a place.

6. **Excellent** is very good. There were no mistakes in her test paper and she got an **excellent** mark for it.

7. **Restaurants** are public eating houses; some of them are more expensive than others.

8. Our new secretary is very **efficient**. She is very good at everything. She does her work very well.

9. In the evening after **sunset** it grows dark. Sometimes the sky is red at **sunset**.

10. Are you ill? You look so **pale**. You are quite white in the face.

11. The children are **asleep**. The children are sleeping. Don't shout so loud. You will wake them up.

12. The top of a building is covered with a roof. We live in the same building or **under the same roof**. At first we could only see the roof of the house over the tree-tops.

13. They thought it best to **disappear**. They thought it best if they were not seen by anybody, if they got out of sight; we watched the car until it **disappeared** in the distance. We watched the car until it was so far away that we could not see it any more.

14. The boy who was late for the lesson said, "Please **excuse** my coming late." When we start to speak to somebody we do not know, we say, '**Excuse** me.'

15. When rain comes in hot weather, it often cools the air. Then it is not so hot any more. I cannot eat the soup; it must wait until it **gets cooler**. On hot summer pleasant to bathe in cool water.

16. You **dropped** something, pick it up. The large tears **dropped** on her plate. Large tears fell on her plate. Suddenly I felt big **drops of rain fall** on my hand.

17. Don't tell them that I am back. I want it to be kept **secret**. The boys carried **secret** letters through the enemy line.

18. When I called at her place, she was not in, so I left a **message**. As she was not in, I asked others to tell her what I had come to see her about. You have brought a good **message**. You have brought good news.

19. People whose **health** is poor are often ill. Those who go in for sports usually keep **in good health**. Something is wrong with Peter's **health**; he must go to the doctor.

20. What is **expensive** costs a lot of money. She is very rich; she can buy herself **expensive** clothes. University education is very expensive in most capitalist countries.

21. The teacher is very **proud of** his pupils' success. The teacher is happy that his pupils do well. Try to work and live so that your parents can **be proud of** you.

4. Read and translate. Прочитайте и переведите. Хонед ва тарчума кунед.

To shine shoes – to clean shoes

To say hello – to greet

Hopefully – full of hope windy

A Mistake

Nozim – Hello, Doctor, I...

Doctor – Come in, come in.

Nozim – I am... .

Doctor – What time do you go to bed?

Nozim – At eleven o'clock.

Doctor – What time do you get up?

Nozim – At seven o'clock. But... .

Doctor – Do you smoke?

Nozim – No, I never smoke.

Doctor – Do you drink?

Nozim – No, I never drink. But. ..

Doctor – Well, how are you?

Nozim – I'm fine.

Doctor – Well, why are you here then?

Nozim – I want to go to the cinema with your daughter.

5. Answer the questions. Add some explanations if necessary. Ответь на вопросы. При необходимости добавьте некоторые пояснения. Ба саволҳо ҷавоб диҳед. Дар ҳолати лозима якчанд равшаниҳо ворид созед.

1. Was the author driving from Italy to Switzerland? 2. Did the driver like the appearance of the strawberries? 3. Were the boys rich? 4. Were they under ten years of age? 5. Were they selling strawberries the next morning? 6. Was it in winter that the author met the boys? 7. Did the boys spend their money on books? 8. Were their parents still alive? 9. Was their father a doctor? 10. Could the boys remain in Verona when the enemy came? 11. Does the title of the story suggest anything else to you?

6. Give the missing question words. Вставьте пропущенные вопросительные слова. Калимаҳои лозимаи саволиро гузored.

1. ... was the author's opinion of the strawberries the boys were selling? 2. ... country was the author coming from? 3. ... were the boys standing the next morning? 4. ... did the boys help the author? 5. ... sort of boys were they? 6. ... did the author drive the car on Sundays? 7. ... did the boys go to see in the hospital? 8. ... had the boys' parents died? 9. ... did the boys help the troops when the enemy came? 10. ...

was wrong with their sister? 11. ... does the author call the boys the two gentlemen of Verona?

7. Fill in the correct preposition. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Пешояндҳои дурустро гузоред.

We were driving ... Switzerland ... the lovely old city ... Verona. 2. He said hello ... us ... a friendly way. 3. The boys worked all day ... the hot summer sun. 4. Niccolo was sitting ... the ground ... the fountain. 5. A man spoke ... me when I was waiting ... a bus ... the square. 6. ... Sunday we shall go ... a village not far ... our home. 7. We usually travel ... bus, but last time Uncle took us ... the country ... his car. 8. We stopped ... front ... a lovely white house ... a red roof. 9. ... their shoes the boys carried secret messages ... the mountains. 10. ... the end ... the war the boys came back ... Verona.

8. Use words of opposite meaning. Используйте слова противоположного значения. Калимаҳои зидмаъноро гузоред.

1. The ball fell inside the garden. 2. I waited till the car appeared round the corner. 3. It is very difficult to help them. 4. Today the weather is cooler than it was yesterday. 5. The boys bought lots of strawberries. 6. Mr Brown is a very old man. 7. The hospital is in a big park. 8. When will the bus arrive?

9. Retell the story from the point of view of

Niccolo or Jacopo. Перескажите рассказу с точки зрения Никколо или Джакомо. Ҳикояро аз нуқтаи назари Николо ва Якобо нақл кунед.

10. Topics for Conversation. Тема для разговора. Мавзӯӣ барои мусоҳиба.

Discuss the following points. Обсудите следующие моменты. Ҳолатҳои зеринро муҳокима кунед.

- a) What should you do if you had a temperature and a headache?
- b) What should we do to keep in good health and be comfortable during very cold winter?
- c) Your grandmother who lives alone says she feels bad and thinks she may have the flu. How should she look after herself at home?

11. In each of the following sentences there is an adjective in brackets. Replace it with the correct form of the verb. Consult your dictionary if necessary. В каждом из следующих предложений есть прилагательное в скобках. Замените его правильной формой глагола. При необходимости обратитесь к словарю. Дар хар як чумлахо дар да-руни кавсхо сифатхо мавчуд аст. Онхоро бо колабҳои дурусти феълҳо иваз кунед.

Can you (descriptive) what happened in the story?
Please let me (full) my pen from your bottle of ink.
It's impossible to (pleasant) everybody.
Please remember to (safe) enough bandages for the hospital.
They (wide) the road last week.
I can't (decisive) what to do next.
Are you (enjoyable) your book?

Easy Reading

Phoning for a Doctor

Bill, a newspaper reporter, was passing through Bilchester when he noticed four ambulances in front of the White Horse Hotel. He stopped at once and took out his notebook. Ambulance men were carrying stretchers into the street, and he could hear groans.

"Excuse me, Miss," he turned to a girl who was standing near the door, "What has happened?"

"They suddenly began to have terrible pains and they were sick," she said. "I was in the restaurant. I saw it all. It must be food poisoning."

At that moment the ambulances began to drive off. Bill drove after them to the hospital. While the ambulance men were busy with the stretchers, Bill walked into the cool casualty department. It was full of nurses. But they were all so busy that they took no notice of him. One nurse was dressing the wounds of two boys who had fallen off their motor-bike. In another corner a woman who had burned her fingers was sitting on a chair, pale and crying sadly.

The ambulance men brought in the stretchers ten of them and placed them in the middle of the floor. Immediately nurses began to take care of the new patient. Bill moved nearer.

"Can't we get Doctor Brown?" asked a nurse.

"No," said the sister. "He's busy in the operating theatre." "What about Doctor Bradbury?"

“It’s his evening off, and he’s playing golf. But matron is phoning the two doctors who are on duty in the town.”

At that moment the matron came in. “It’s no good,” she said. “Doctor Scott has gone to a woman who is seriously ill. Doctor Burt is out too. There has been an accident with a tractor at the fruit farm. You will have to look after the patients until I find another doctor. How are they?”

“I think they are a little better,” said the sister. “But they are still asking for a doctor. One of them said. ‘Phone Saint Mary’s Hospital, Portsmouth’.”

“Good idea!” said the matron. “Put them to bed and keep them warm. Meanwhile I’ll phone to Portsmouth.”

Bill stopped an ambulance man as he was leaving. “Tell me,” he said, “Why is the matron phoning Portsmouth?”

The ambulance man looked at him with surprise. “Didn’t you hear?” he said. “We need a doctor. The two young doctors who live in the hospital aren’t here. The other two doctors . . .”

“Do you mean that there are only four doctors in this town?” Bill asked.

“Of course not! We’ve got a lot of doctors,” said the ambulance man proudly.

“But where are all the rest of them?” cried Bill.

“Well, you see, our Doctor Cameron was 80 years old today. So the other doctors decided to give him a party at the White Horse Hotel. They asked for a very special fish dish. Now they’re all on those stretchers!”

<p>Bilchester [ˈbɪlʃɪstə] – Билитчестер notebook [ˈnəʊtbʊk] – дафтари қайд; записная книжка; тетрадь stretcher [ˈstretʃə] – занбар; тахти равон; носилки groan [grəʊn] – нолиш; стон poisoning [ˈpɔɪznɪŋ] – захролуд, отравление; заражение casualty department [ˈkæʒjuəlti diː pɑːtmənt] – шуъбаи басту банд; отделение скорой помощи в больнице (для пострадавших от несчастных случаев)</p>	<p>matron [ˈmeɪtrən] – бону; матрона; замужная женщина meanwhile [ˈmiːnwaɪl] – ба ҳар ҳол; тем временем; между тем Bradbury [ˈbrædbəri] – Бредбери (исми хос) Burt [bɜːt] – Берт (номи шахс) patient [ˈpeɪʃ(ə)nt] – мари́з, касал; больной; пациент Portsmouth [pɔːtsməθ] – Портсмут (шаҳр дар Англия); (город в Англии)</p>
---	---

operating theatre ['o'pəreɪtɪŋ θiətə] – толори амалиёти ҷарроҳӣ; опе- рационная комната	Cameron ['kæm (ə)rən] – Кэмерон special ['speʃ(ə)l] – махсус; особый; специальный
---	---

12. Rearrange the sentences in their correct order. Переставьте предложения в правильном порядке. Ҷумларо бо тартиби дуруст гузоред.

1. The matron phoned the two doctors who were on duty in the town.
2. Bill drove after the ambulances to the hospital.
3. One day Bill, a newspaper reporter, noticed four ambulances standing in front of the White Horse Hotel, at Bilchester.
4. The man told him that most of the town doctors who had celebrated Doctor Cameron's 80th birthday at the White Horse Hotel were on the stretchers now as they had had a very special fish dish.
5. The matron was told that both of the two town doctors were out.
6. Ten stretchers were taken to the casualty department and the nurses began to take care of the new patients.
7. Bill asked a girl standing near the hotel door what had happened.
8. As there was no other way out the matron phoned Saint Mary's Hospital at Portsmouth.
9. The girl told Bill that all the men had suddenly had terrible pains and had been very sick. She thought it was food poisoning.
10. Bill stopped an ambulance man and asked him where all the other doctors were.

Jokes

Dentist: "Stop waving your arms and making faces, sir. Why, I have not even touched your tooth."

Patient: "I know you haven't, but you're standing on my corn."

A wife could not read the thermometer, but she took her husband's temperature with it and gave a call to the doctor. "Dear Doctor, please, comes at once. My husband's temperature is 63."

The doctor replied, "Dear Madam, I can do nothing. Send for the fire brigade."

Proverbs

1. After death, the doctor.
2. Good health is above wealth.
3. A laugh a day will keep the doctor away.
4. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
5. What can't be cured must be endured.
6. A good laugh is sunshine in a house.
7. After dinner sit a while, after supper walk a mile.
8. Eat at pleasure, drink with measure.
9. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

Doctor Bell fell down the well, and broke his collar bone. Doctors should attend the sick and leave the well alone.

Use three physicians' skill – first Doctor Quiet, then Doctor Merriment, and Doctor Diet.

wave [weiv] – мавҷ; волна

measure ['meʒə] – андоза; мера, размер

make faces – худро нишон додан; притворяться

corn [kɔ:n] – обила; чуворимакка; мозоль; зерно; зёрнышко

thermometer [Θə'məmitə] – ҳароратсанҷ; термометр; градусник

collar bone ['kɒlə bæʊn] – устухони оҳурак, ключица

fire brigade [faɪə bri'geɪd] – дастаи сӯхторхомӯшкунӣ; пожарная команда

attend [ə'tend] – иштирок кардан; ширкат варзидан; посещать,

wealth [welθ] – дорой; бойигарӣ; богатство; состояние

cure [kjʊə] – табобат; лечение

physician [fɪ'ziʃ(ə)n] – духтур; табиб; врач; доктор

endure [in'djʊə] – токат кардан; выдержать; вытерпеть

skill [skil] – маҳорат; умение; навык

diet ['daɪət] – парҳез; диета, режим питания

pleasure ['pleʒə] – лаззат, хурсандӣ, завқ; удовольствие

Read with a dictionary

Edward Jenner

Eduard Jenner (1749–1823) was an English doctor, the discover of vaccination. He was born at Berkeley, Gloucestershire on May 17.

He studied medicine in London and began his practice in Berkeley in 1773, when he was twenty-four years old.

Edward Jenner liked to observe and investigate things ever he was a boy. This led to the discovery of vaccination 1st smallpox. Today cases of smallpox are very rare because almost every baby in the world, when it is about seven months old is vaccinated against this disease. The vaccination is effective about seven years.

Jenner's discovery of vaccination was one of the greatest discoveries in the history of medicine. In 1793 he published a report on his efficient new method, which he called 'vaccination'. This name comes from the Latin word 'vacca', which means 'cow'. At first people paid no attention to the work of the country doctor. But soon the country doctor found himself the most talked-about doctor in the world. The news of the wonderful discovery spread abroad. People rushed to their doctors to be vaccinated. Very soon there was no part of the world that had not taken up vaccination. France, Germany, Spain and Austria were the first countries to do so. In America, Egypt and China the operation was done on thousands of people and terrible smallpox began «disappear as if by magic. The Indians were so thankful to Jenner that they sent him a present of over five thousand dollars, Napoleon, although he was at war with England at that time, set free two British prisoners when he learned that they were friends of Edward Jenner. Honours and presents from all over the world came to Jenner.

Nowadays smallpox is practically unknown in civilized countries Edward Jenner died at Berkeley in 1823, aged seventy-four. To his last days the 'country doctor' lived simply, spending on research the money which Parliament gave him, and vaccinating of charge anyone who came to him.

13. Answer the questions. Ответь на вопросы. Ба саволҳо ҷавоб диҳед.

1. Was Edward Jenner an American doctor?
2. Did he study in London or at Berkeley?
3. Did Edward Jenner discover vaccination against the grippe?
4. Did he work in a city or in the country?
5. Was vaccination known only in England or did it spread abroad?
6. What countries were the first to take it up?
7. How did different nations thank Edward Jenner?
8. What kind of life did Edward Jenner lead at Berkeley?

9. Is smallpox still a serious problem in civilized countries?
10. Why are cases of smallpox very rare now?

LESSON 3

Human right and democracy

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салохият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибдодаро дар нутқ истифода карда таъвонад.

human ['hju:mən]	stream [stri:m]
thought [θɔ:t]	faint [feint]
outstanding ['aut'stændɪŋ]	patient ['peɪʃ(ə)nt]
manage ['mænɪdʒ]	rubbish ['rʌbɪʃ]
belt [belt]	fool [fu:l]
hit [hit]	suspect [sʌs'pekt]
contain [kən'teɪn]	heroic [hɪ'rəʊɪk]
valuable ['væljuəbl]	detailed [di: 'teɪld]
mankind ['mæn'kaɪnd]	research [rɪ'sə:tʃ]
forever ['fə'revə]	sunrise ['sʌnraɪz]
threaten ['θret(ə)n]	blood [blʌd]

BECAUSE I AM HUMAN THOUGHT

Snezhkov was an **outstanding** bacteriologist from the South. He was ill when the Germans occupied the city where he lived and could not **manage** to get away.

“Look” here, Maria Petrovna,” he said to his old aunt,” the Germans want to send me to Germany to work for them. What do you think of that, eh?

The aunt’s only reply was to cross herself.

“You don’t like it,” said the professor. “Neither do I here is what I would like you to do for me. **I want you to sew** a belt like this.”

On a bit of paper professor Snezhkov drew a belt with a lot of narrow little pockets.

As soon as it grew dark, he went to his laboratory. There he picked out the test – tubes containing his most **valuable** cultures of microbes

and put them in the belt. I do not know what cultures those were. I only know that he had worked on some of them for a number of years and was close to a discovery that would have rid mankind forever of one of the most dangerous diseases.

Late that night **he put on the belt** and left the house. His plans were quite simple – to make his way to the partisans and send his valuable belt with them to our lines.

A thousand dangers **threatened** him. But from sunset to **sunrise** he continued his way east, where life was.

On and on he walked. The clothes in which he had left home were worn to rags. His gray hair became matted with dust. In one village he changed his worn shoes for peasant's sandals, in another his knapsack for an old blouse.

He had already left the steppe land and was making his way through the woods. Orel was **not far off**. His feet were covered with blood and his heart troubled him. Once he sat down beside a stream to rest and evidently fainted. When he came to, he was lying with his head in the water.

"I 'm in a bad way", **he muttered to himself** sadly as he got up, pale and weak. His health was growing worse and worse, but he still managed to walk on. At last a day come when he came to, he felt that he could not go on much longer. He suffered terribly at that thought that together with him his work, which mankind needed, would be lost.

No longer hiding, he entered a big village **in the day time**. He knew that there was a hospital there.

"Good morning, doctor" he turned to the little woman in a white smock.

"How do you do, granddad. Where are you from?"

"I've come a long way," said the professor and dropped on to a chair. I have some business with you, doctor. I don't know you, but you are evidently a Russian, and a doctor. That is enough for me. Here is what I want to tell you.

It was decided that he would remain with Doctor Klitina for several days. It was very dangerous. The fascists were keeping a watch on her. The **patients** had seen the professor come and had seen the doctor take him home with her from the hospital. But all he had to do was to leave the belt with her and go. This is what they decided to do at the first sign of danger.

They came for him at night. He was sleeping in the shed. Unhurriedly he got up, but he took off his belt immediately. Pushing aside the **rubbish** lying in one corner, he put his belt down on the floor. On top of it he threw everything that was at hand.

He did not remember so clearly what happened after that. He was taken somewhere. He fell down, and immediately tried to get up again because he was being kicked to the ground. For some reason the commander ordered his soldiers to take off all his clothes. For a long time he stood there naked, suffering from a great pain at his heart and in his left arm. But then he pulled himself together. The Germans were shouting at him and talking things over among themselves. He listened to what they had to say, and suddenly began to speak himself in excellent German.

“What are you threatening me with?” asked the professor with contempt. “Here I am standing in front of you, a naked man in poor health. Yet your tanks and guns mean nothing to me. That is because I am human thought, I am Russian. You want to kill me, yet you shall not kill me. I spit at you, fools that you are!”

Suspecting that he was an important member of a partisan detachment, the Germans sent him off to Orel. For three months the heroic man lay in a dirty cellar among other dying Russians. It was there that we found him. He was still alive when we took him out of the cellar and carried him to the hospital. The first word that he immediately spoke when he came to himself was the name of the village in which he had left his valuable belt. The belt was found and brought to him.

The heroic man died after leaving for his students’ **detailed** instructions on how to continue the research he had begun.

1. Read, make transcription and translate into Tajik or Russian. Прочитайте, сделайте транскрипцию и переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Хонда, транскрипсия карда ва ба забонҳои тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума намоед.

bacteriologist	sandal
culture	steppe
fascist	granddad
instruction	commander
microbe	unhurriedly
partisan	

2. Give the principal forms of the following verbs. Приведите основные формы следующих глаголов. Шаклҳои асосии феълро нависед:

say, send, want, think, do, sew, draw, grow, go, put, know, pick, lot, leave, make, turn, become, change, sit, come, see, liea (jot up, feel, mean, need, lose, hide, tell, keep, take, die, sleep, push, throw, fall, stand, pull, begin, threaten, live, speak, bring find.

4. Translate the words in bold type. Переведите слова выделенные. Калимаҳои сиёҳ кардашударо тарҷума кунед.

1. **Human** is the adjective for 'man'. When the boy shouted, his voice was not like a **human voice** at all, it seemed more like the cry of some animal. Only **human beings** talk, animals do not talk.

2. **Thought** is the noun for the verb '**think**'. Mr. Tailor was sitting and thinking sad **thoughts**. A good **thought** came into his head. A good idea came into his head.

3. An **outstanding** person is a well-known and important person. Rakhimov was an **outstanding** scientist.

4. To **manage** means to be able to do something. Professor Rakhimov was ill when the Germans occupied the city where he lived, and therefore he **could not manage** to get away. It was difficult, but I still **managed** to get tickets for the concert.

5. Men wear a **belt**. A **belt** keeps their trousers up. Daisy wore a blue dress with a white collar and a white **belt**.

6. He wrote his name on a bit of paper. He wrote his name on a piece of paper. Give me a bit of bread. Give me a piece of bread. You look a **bit** pale. You look a little pale.

7. This book **contains** three stories. There are three stories in this book. The library **contains** several million books.

8. A **valuable** thing costs a lot of money or is very important. Take care not to lose these **valuable** papers.

9. **Mankind** means all the people of the world as a kind of living beings different from animals. Peace and friendship between peoples will save **mankind** from war.

10. **Forever** means for always. Lenin will be remembered **forever**. He left his hometown **forever**, never to return.

11. They **threatened** to kill him if he did not tell them where his unit was hiding. They tried to frighten him saying that they would kill him. You can't **threaten** a brave man, he is not afraid of you.

12. **Sunrise** is the time when the sun rises in the morning.
13. The wounded soldier lost a lot of **blood**. After his long journey on foot Professor Rakhimov's feet were **covered with blood**.
14. A **stream** is a small river. At night animals came in the **stream** to drink. He sat down **beside a stream** to rest.
15. To **faint** means to fall down like dead, not knowing what is happening around one. In hot, crowded and poorly aired rooms people sometimes **faint**. The professor was so weak that when he sat down to rest, he **fainted**.
16. A person who is ill and goes to see a doctor is the doctor's **patient**. At hospitals you can find **patients** from all over Tajikistan.
17. **Rubbish** is useless things that are thrown away. In autumn we cleaned the garden and burnt the old leaves and nil in other **rubbish**. Tom said that the film was **rubbish**; Lie didn't like the film and said it was no good at all.
18. A **fool** is a person who is not clever at all. He was a fool to give matches to the child.
19. To **suspect** means to imagine or believe that somebody has done something bad, without being sure of it. They **suspected** that the enemy soldiers were hiding among the trees. **Suspecting** that he was an important member of a partisan unit, the Germans sent the professor off to a concentration camp.
20. The soldier fought **heroically**. The soldier fought like a hero. Professor Rahimov was a **heroic** man. He was a **hero**. Many soldiers died like **heroes**.
21. A **detailed** description is a very exact description in which every small point is paid attention to. The professor gave his students **detailed** instructions. He told them exactly what they should do.
22. **Research** is the scientific study of some question. The professor's students continued his **research work**. **Research workers** are scientific workers.

3. Give the Tajik variants of the following words. Приведите варианты следующих слов по таджикском или русском языке. Гунаҳои тоҷикии калимаҳои зеринро диҳед.

value – valuable	think – thought
danger – dangerous	threaten – threat
fascism – fascist	continue – continuation

darkness – dark	decide – decision
blood – bloody	happen – happening
heart – hearty	hurry – hurry
life – lively	shout – shout
detail – detailed	speak – speech
importance – important	suspect – suspicious

4. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони англисӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. You don't like it. Neither do I. 2. Here is what I would like you to do for me. 3. One of the most dangerous diseases. 4. On and on he walked. 5. His clothes were worn to rags. 6. His heart troubled him. 7. I'm in a bad way. 8. I have some business with you. 9. Here is what I want to tell you. 10. It was decided that... 11. All he had to do was to leave the belt with her. 12. They came for him. 13. Fools that you are. 14. It was there that we found him. 15. Detailed instructions on how to continue the research.

5. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед

1. What does a bacteriologist do? 2. Why did the professor not manage to leave his home when the Germans occupied the city? 3. What valuable research work did he do? 4. Why did he decide to make his way to the partisans? 5. Why could Snezhkov not get to the partisans? 6. Why did the Germans take Snezhkov prisoner? 7. What happened to the professor's belt? 8. Can we say that Snezhkov was a hero? Give your reasons. 9. Can you give any other examples of heroic Tajik people? Why did Snezhkov say that he was human thought?

6. Fill in the suitable words. Вставьте пропущенные слова. Калимаҳои мувофиқро гузоред (*manage, suspect, contain, valuable, mankind, outstanding, forever, research, blood, stream, mutter, immediately, human, faint, threaten, value, danger, dangerous, fascism, fascist, darkness, dark, blood, bloody, heart, hearty, life, lively, importance, important, detail, detailed*)

1... will ... be thankful to the Soviet Union for its victory ... 2. I hope I'll ... come back ... 3. Snezhkov was an ... worker. 4. The man ... something and ... 5. This bag things. 6. The driver was ... of

having run over somebody because there was some ... on his car. 7. The man ... to throw the bag into the ... 8. The child was so dirty that looked like a . . . being. 9. Gold is very ... It has great.... 10. The doctor gave his assistants.. . instructions. He paid attention even to the smallest... 11. It is very outside. We cannot see anything in the ... 12. Tuberculosis used to be a very . . . disease. Whoever fell ill with it was in great ... 13. We gave them a ... welcome. We welcomed them with all our ... 14. Anne is a very ... girl. She brings ... into any company. 15. This a question of great. It is much more ... than I thought. 16 ... battle was fought near the village. The wounded soldier lost a lot of ... 17. The ... army was driven back by the armed forces. That put an end to the threat of

7. Use the correct preposition where necessary. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Ба чойҳои лозима пешояндҳои мувофиқро гузоред

1. We suspected that the enemy soldiers were hiding ... the trees. 2. We must change our wet clothes ... dry ones. 3. He asked... me if I wanted him to do anything ... me. 4. His feet covered ... blood when he sata stream to rest. 5. He began to speak . . . me ... excellent Russian. 6. The patients were suffering... great pains. 7. This research is ... great importance. 8. Mankind will remember him ... his valuable work forever. 9. The book contained a lot detailed information. 10. They got home just ... sunrise.

8. Fill in the suitable words from among the following verbs and nouns in the brackets (think, thought; threaten, threat; continue, continuation; decide, decision, hurry; shout, shout; speak, speech; happen, happening; suspect, suspicion; suffer, suffering). Вставьте пропущенные слова из числа глаголов и существительных, приведённых в скобках (think, thought; threaten, threat; continue, continuation; decide, decision, hurry; shout, shout; speak, speech; happen, happening; suspect, suspicion; suffer, suffering). Аз қавс исм ва феъли мувофиқро интихоб карда, чойҳои холиро пур кунед (think, thought; threaten, threat; continue, continuation; decide, decision, hurry; shout, shout; speak, speech; happen, happening; suspect, suspicion; suffer, suffering)

1. They promised to ... the matter soon, but I had no idea that they had already made the ... 2. The Germans... to kill Snezhkov, but he was not afraid of their ... 3. What do you ... of the play? The ... of going to the theatre made me happy. 4. So many things have .. . this

summer. The latest ... was my sister's wedding. 5. Many people ... at the meeting. The first ... was the longest. 6. Why are you in such a ...? – I'm ... to the railway station to meet my friends. 7. The wounded soldier,... great pains. It was hard to see his ... 8. The Germans ... the doctor. She had been under ... for some time. 9. The story will be The ... of the story will appear in tomorrow's paper. 10. We heard loud ... in the yard. The boys were ... playing football.

9. Say in other words. Скажите другими словами. Бо таври ди-гар ҷумлаҳоро баён кунед.

1. Rahimov was famous for his scientific work. 2. He did not succeed in leaving the town. 3. His aunt made a belt for him. 4. What did he answer? 5. What is in this bottle? 6. He went through the woods. 7. What do doctors call your illness? 8. He sat down beside a river. 9. He made up his mind to go away. 10. Will you stay here? 11. He got up slowly. 12. He fell, but rose at once. 13. They were discussing things in a loud voice. 14. He spoke very good English. 15. Suddenly an idea came into his head.

10. Find the opposites and arrange them in pairs. Найдите антонимы и расположите их попарно. Калимаҳои зидмаъноро ёфта, онҳоро дар тарзи ҷуфт гузоред.

sunset, dark, worn, loud, forget, long, old, ask, new, arrive, continue, find, put on, short, far, sunrise, young, early, remember, lose, answer, near, leave, take off, light, stop.

11. Retell the story from the point of view of. Перескажите рассказ с точки зрения. Ҳикояро аз нуқтаи назари... нақл кунед

1) Rahimov, 2) the doctor, 3) Rahimov's aunt, 4) one of the soldiers will found Rahimov, 5) one of the Germans who took him prisoner.

12. Topics for Conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба.

Describe a village of the district you live in.

Describe the town you live in.

Have you ever been to any interesting village or town in Tajikistan? Speak about it.

Have you ever visited any other Republics? Speak about them (the towns you visited, the sights you saw, the people you met).

13. Imagine that you are a guide and your classmates are visitors to your home town (village). Tell them about it and answer their questions. Представьте, что вы гид, а ваши одноклассники - гости вашего родного города (села). Расскажите им о нём городе, селе и ответьте на их вопросы. Тасаввур кунед, ки шумо роҳбад хастед ва ҳам-синфони шумо меҳмонони ба деҳаи шумо омада мебошанд. Ба онҳо дар бораи шаҳратон нақл кунед ва ба саволҳои онҳо ҷавоб диҳед.

14. Arrange a press conference. Организуйте пресс-конференцию. Бо аъзоёни матбуот конференсия ташкил кунед

Ask questions of those of your classmates who have visited some interesting places either in Tajikistan or in some other republics. Let them answer your questions as Tajiks who have visited some other republics. Let them answer as guests from other republics who have come here to visit Tajikistan.

15. With the help of your dictionary find the opposites of these words and translate them into Tajik or Russian. С помощью вашего словаря найдите противоположные значения этих слов и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Бо ёрии луғататон зидмаънои калимаҳои додашударо ёбед ва онҳоро тарҷума кунед.

defend – at	same – di
winter – su	ugly – pr
failure – su	coldest – ho
worse – be ..	wide – na
wrong – co	necessary – us

(The opposites of these words contain double letters!)

Proverbs

1. War is the sport of kings.
2. Every country has its customs.
3. A man can die but once.
4. When guns speak, it is too late to argue.
5. Fortune favours the brave.

Quotations

1. A man, who is going to commit an inhuman act, excuses himself by saying “I am only human after all”. (S. Harris)

2. No army can withstand the strength of an idea whose time has come. (Victor Hugo)

3. If you do not think about the future, you cannot have one. (J. Galsworthy)

4. It is the duty of a man to see other countries but love his own. (E. V. Lucas)

custom ['kʌstəm] – анъана; обычай, традиция

commit [kə'mɪt] – кардан, намудан, ичро намудан; совершать

argue ['ɑ:gju:] – баҳс (мубоҳиса) кардан; спорить, препираться,

inhuman [ɪn'hju:mən] – ғайри инсонӣ, ноодамӣ; антигуманный, бесчеловечный

withstand [wɪð'stænd] – истодан, бардоштан; устоять, выдержать

fortune ['fɜ:tju:n] – сарнавишт, тақдир, қисмат, рок, судьба, фатум

favour ['feɪvə] – хайрхоҳӣ, некхоҳӣ; расположение; благосклонность

quotation [kwəu'teɪʃ(ə)n] – иқтибосоварӣ, иқтибос; цитирование, цитата

Easy Reading

16. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведи на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Caucasus [kɔ:kəsəs]

subtropics [sʌb'tropiks]

eucalyptus [ju:k(ə)'lɪptəs]

picture gallery ['pɪktʃə 'gæl(ə)rɪ]

mass [mæs]

zone [zəʊn]

monument ['mɒnjəmənt]

steppe [step]

Caspian ['kaespian]

Caucasian [kɔ:'keɪzən]

colourful ['kʌləf(ə)l]

culture ['kʌltʃə]

palm tree [pɑ:m tri:]

cultural ['kʌltʃ(ə)r(ə)l]

Armenia [ɑ:'mi:njə]

Azerbaijan [æzəbaɪ'dʒɑ:n | tradition

[trə'dɪʃ(ə)n]

The Caucasus

There is probably no other area in the world like the Caucasus, a mountain land between the Black and Caspian Seas.

It is a rich area. It has something of everything – maritime climate, subtropics, eternal snow and masses of ice in the high zones. There are palm trees and eucalyptuses, pine-covered mountain sides, steppes, fruit gardens, tea plantations and vineyards.

The highest among the thousands of Caucasian peaks are Kazbek (5,047 m) and Elbrus (5,633 m).

There are rapid mountain streams and beautiful lakes. The most beautiful lakes are Ritsa in Georgia and Sevan in Armenia. The warm Black Sea is lined with coastal resorts and colorful holiday towns.

There are charming towns and villages where (folk traditions can be seen even in modern buildings and monuments. The hospitality of the Caucasian people is as famous as their lovely songs and quick dances.

The capitals of the three Transcaucasian Republics are big cities with well-developed industries and research institutes, Universities, schools and cultural centres. Their museums, picture galleries, exhibitions and theatres give an idea of Georgian, Armenian and Azerbaijan culture.

17. Read the text and then fill in the blanks. Прочитайте текст и заполните пробелы. Матнро хонед ва чойҳои холиро пур кунед.

1. The Caucasus is a ... land between the ... and Caspian Seas. 2. It is a ... area. 3. It has a ... climate. 4. The ... among the Caucasian peaks are Kazbek and ... 5. The most beautiful ... are Ritsa in ... and ... in Armenia. 6. The ... of the Caucasian people is as famous as their ... songs and ... dances. The capitals of the ... Union Republics are ... cities with ... industries.

REVISION I

In the first half-term you have learnt the following words:

1. Nouns lesson 1 dad dressmaker glasses mind (remark) sign Switzerland lesson 2 appearance health message restaurant	2. Verbs lesson 1 exclaim mutter remark turn touch lesson 2 drop excuse disappear guide	3. Adjectives lesson 1 anxious lovely sad safe wise pleased lesson 2 cool efficient expensive pale	4. Adverbs lesson 1 immediately maybe lesson 2 Asleep Evidently
--	---	---	--

roof strawberry sunset lesson 3 belt bit blood fool mankind research rubbish stream sunrise thought patient 24 (25)	 lesson 3 contain faint manage suspect threaten	proud public secret excellent lesson 3 detailed heroic human outstanding valuable 19	 lesson 3 Forever 5. Preposition lesson 1 Beside lesson 2 ----- lesson 3 -----
---	--	--	--

Summing up:	1. Noun	24 (25)	
	2. Verbs	14	
	3. Adjectives	19	
	4. Adverbs	5	
	5. Prepositions	1	63 (64) words

LESSON 4.

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матро хонда, тарчума, накл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда та-вонад.

determine [dɪ'tə:mɪn]
spirit ['spɪrɪt]
honest ['ɒnɪst]
truth [tru:θ]
express [ɪk'spres]
expression [ɪk'spreʃ(ə)n]
extremely [ɪks'tri:mli]

separate ['sep(ə)rɪt]
power ['paʊə]
calm [kɑ:m]
including [ɪn'klu:dɪŋ]
artist [ɑ:tɪst]
struggle ['strʌgl]
defence [dɪ'fen(t)s]

gifted [ˈ ɡɪftɪd]
admire [ədˈmaɪə]
admiration [ˌædməˈreɪʃ(ə)n]
fond of [fɒnd]

choice [tʃɔɪs]
freedom [ˈ friːdəm]
point [pɔɪnt]
within [wɪˈðɪn]

LOVE WILL FIND OUT THE WAY

(After Paul Robeson)

For twelve years I lived and worked in London. My experience abroad made me understand that no matter where I might travel my home must be America. That question was raised during the Congressional Committee hearing. I had said that in Russia I had felt for the first time like a full human being. In that country there was no colour prejudice like in Mississippi or Washington.



One of the committee members angrily asked why I had not stayed in Russia.

“Because my father was a slave,” I answered. “My people died to build this country. I am going to stay right here and have a part of it just like you. And no fascist-minded people will drive me from it. Is that clear?”

Well, let me explain what made me feel that way. In Britain I understood that the character of a nation is not determined by the upper classes. It is **determined** by the common people. The common people of all nations are each other’s brothers in the great family of mankind.

Although I remained a Negro in spirit, I also learned to know and love the **honest** white working people. In England I learned that all people can love each other like brothers. I first understood this **truth** through song. That is not strange. The songs that have lived through the years have always been the best expression of the heart of mankind. As a young singer, I had the great good luck to make friends with Lawrence Brown, an extremely gifted Negro composer. I had always admired and been fond of the simple, beautiful songs I had heard every day in my childhood.

I had felt that the work songs and blues of my father’s folk from the plantations of North Carolina should become important concert songs. **It was Lawrence Brown** who told me that I was right. And so for my first five years as a singer I sang only my people’s songs.

Then I learnt the songs of other peoples. In Britain I learnt the beautiful English, Welsh and Scottish folk songs. As I sang these lovely melodies, I felt that they, too, were close to my heart. **They expressed** the same feeling that I knew in Negro music. Still, art alone cannot unite peoples that are **separated** from each other. In my case, it was the terrible events that happened in the world that brought me to stand among them.

The years that I lived abroad saw the rise of fascism. In 1933 Hitler rose **to power** in Germany. In 1933 Mussolini's fascist army marched against Ethiopia. Then, the next year, came Spain. The Spanish Republic was attacked by the fascist traitor Franco who was supported by Hitler and Mussolini. But the Western powers were calm and unmoving. They did not care what would happen to Ethiopia and Spain or to Communists, trade unionists, Jews and others in Germany. They hoped the fascists would save Europe from 'the danger of Communism'.

But the common people in Britain understood the danger. Everywhere they rallied for anti-fascist action. The heart of this movement was the trade unions and the political parties of the Left. But many other people took part in it too, including members of the middle class and people from the arts, science and other professions. And so it was that I, as an artist, was drawn into the movement. I understood that the struggle against fascism must take first place over every other interest.

Over the radio I explained my stand to a great London rally in **defence** of Spain:

"Every artist, every scientist, must decide now where he stands. He has **no choice**. The battle front is everywhere."

And I saw, too, that the struggle **for Negro rights** was part of the anti-fascist struggle. I said, "The artist **must choose** fight for freedom or for slavery. I have made my choice.

I went to Spain in 1938. That was an important turning point in my life. There I saw that it was the working men and women of Spain who were heroically fighting for their own people. Volunteers from among the workers of other lands had come to help in the defence of Madrid. In Spain I sang with my whole heart for these heroic fighters of the International Brigade. A warm feeling for my homeland grew within me as I met the men of the Abraham Lincoln Battalion. Those thousands of brave young Americans had crossed the sea to fight for

the government of the Spanish people. My heart filled with **admiration** and love for those white Americans. And I felt very proud of my own people when I saw that there were Negroes, too, among the Lincoln men in Spain.

Spain – the anti-fascist struggle and all that I learned it – brought me back to America.

1. Read and translate these words. Прочитайте и переведите эти слова – Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва тарҷума кунед.

action [ækʃ(ə)n]	fascism [ˈfæʃɪz(ə)m]
anti-fascist [ˈæntiˈ fæʃɪst]	fascist [fæʃɪst]
battalion [bəˈtæliən]	melody [ˈmelədi]
brigade [brɪˈgeɪd]	political [pəˈlɪtɪk(ə)l]
Communist [ˈkɒmjunist]	rally [ˈræli]
democracy [dɪˈmɒkrəsi]	Scottish [ˈskɒtɪʃ]
Ethiopia [iːθiˈəupiə]	trade unionist [ˈtreɪdˈjuːnənɪst]
fascism [ˈfæʃɪz(ə)m]	upper classes [ˈʌpəˈklaːsɪz]
Ethiopia [iːθiˈəupiə]	upper classes [ˈʌpəˈklaːsɪz]

2. Give the three forms of the following words. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

live, work, make, understand, travel, raise, say, feel, be, ask, stay, answer, die, build, go, have, drive, explain, determine, remain, learn, know, love, hear, become, tell, sing, express, separate, happen, bring, stand, rise, march, come, attack, support, care, hope, save, take, draw, decide, see, choose, fight, help, grow, meet, cross, fill.

3. Translate the words in bold type into Tajik or Russian. Переведите слова жирным шрифтом на таджикский или русский язык. Калимаҳои сиёҳкардашударо ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. **Determine** means to make up one's mind. He **has determined** that nothing shall keep him from going there now. **Determine** also means to be the fact that decides. The character of a nation **is not determined** by the upper classes.

2. He remained a Negro **in spirit**. He remained a Negro in his thoughts and feelings. 'We shall be with you in spirit means that our thoughts will be with you. I felt close to them **in spirit**. I felt close to them in my heart, in my inner feeling

3. **Honest** means fair and open, not hiding one's real character. He is an **honest man**. Most people earn their living by **honest work**. He gave **an honest opinion** about my work, he **honestly** told me what he thought about it.

4. **Truth** means that which is true. Tom is an honest boy, he always tells the truth.

5. To **express** means to put into words, or to show by look, voice or action. I'm afraid I **can't express** my feelings. I can't put them into words. The songs that have lived through the years have always been the best **expression** of the heart of mankind.

6. Lola is an **extremely** nice girl. Lola is a very, very nice girl. Murod is an **extremely** strong boy. Murod stronger than Khurshed.

7. **Gifted** means very clever and very able. A **gift** means natural talent. Some people **have a gift for art**, others for languages, still others for music, etc. Sometimes we may hear or read about people of **many gifts**.

8. To look at something with **admiration** means to be greatly pleased with it, and to have a very good opinion of it. **Admiration** is the «feeling we have when we admire something unusually beautiful, or somebody unusually clever, strong, etc. Everybody listened to the gifted singer with great **admiration**. Everybody **admired** the great singer.

9. To **be fond** of means to like very much, be full of love for somebody or something. Are you **fond** of music? She is a **fond and loving mother**; she loves her children very much.

10. To **separate** means to keep away from, to be between. England is **separated from** France by the English Channel. **Separation from** his friends made him very sad. In time of war many husbands and wives were **separated**.

11. **Power** means strength of force. Water **has great power**. It can be used in **electric power stations**. A state that has great international importance and influence is also called a **power**. **The Western powers** remained calm when fascism spread in Europe.

12. **Calm** means quiet, not windy when we speak of the weather or the sea. There was no wind and the sea was quite calm. It means 'not excited' when we speak of people. Don't get excited, keep calm. Try to **calm yourself**. The angry man **calmed down**.

13. To **include** means to contain or to be a part of something. Negroes were **included** in the International Brigade in Spain. He has been to many countries, **including** England.

14. **Artists** produce works of art. Sabzali is a great **artist**.

15. To **struggle** means to fight. Tajik people are **struggling** for peace and friendly relations with all countries. Many artists joined the **struggle** against fascism.

16. **Defence** means fighting against an attack. During the Great Patriotic in Tajik people fought in defense of their country.

17. **Choice** means an act of choosing or the right to choose. I must go back, I have no choice. He has made the right choice. Fie has chosen the right thing.

18. **Freedom** means being free. Paul Robeson fought for the freedom of his people. He wanted them to be free.

19. That was an important turning point in his life. At that time his whole life changed.

20. **Within** means in or inside something. A new, warm feeling grew **within** me as I met the men of the Abraham Lincoln Battalion. I'll come back to you **within an hour**. I'll come back in less than an hour. I may be back earlier, but not later than an hour's time.

4. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Перевидите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. My experience abroad made me understand that no matter where I might travel. 2. One of the committee members. 3. My people died to build this country. 4. I'll have a part of it just like you. 5. Fascist-minded people. 6. What made me feel that way? 7. I remained a Negro in spirit. 8. I understood this truth through song. 9. The songs that have lived through the years. 10. So for my first years as a singer. 11. It was the terrible events that brought me to stand among them. 12. Those years saw the rise of fascism. 13. They rallied for anti-fascist action. 14. The heart of this movement was the political parties of the left. 15. So it was that I was drawn into the movement. 16. The struggle against fascism must take first place over every other interest. 17. Every artist must decide where he stands. 18. The artist must choose to fight for freedom or slavery. 19. It was the working men who were fighting for democracy. 20. It was the fascists who were fighting their own people. 21. Volunteers from among the workers.

5. Give short answers. Add some explanations if necessary – Дайте короткие ответы. При необходимости добавьте некоторые пояснения. Ҷавобҳои кӯтоҳ диҳед. Агар зарурият пеш ояд, пурратар шахр диҳед.

1. Did Paul Robeson spend some years abroad? 2. Did he feel at home in Russia? 3. Had his father been a slave? 4. Is it only the upper classes that determine the character of a nation? 5. Did Robeson like the common people in England? 6. Did he remain a Negro in spirit? 7. Can different nations love each other like brothers? 8. Did Lawrence Brown think that Negro folk music was important? 9. Was it in 1930 that Hitler rose to power? 10. Did the Western powers do anything to prevent the fascists from attacking the Spanish Republic? 11. Did the common people in Britain understand the danger of fascism? 12. Were there any black soldiers in the Abraham Lincoln Battalion? 13. Did Robeson remain in Spain?

6. Answer the following questions. Вставьте пропущенные вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. What did Robeson's experience abroad make him understand? 2. In what country did he feel like a real human being? 3. What did one of the committee members angrily ask him when, he spoke highly of the Soviet Union? 4. Where did Robeson learn that it is the common people who determine a nation's character? 5. Why is it that Robeson is so fond of the coloured people? 6. What expresses the heart of mankind best of all? 7. What in Britain drew Robeson closer to the common peoples Europe? 8. Why didn't the Western powers try to stop the rise of fascism? 9. What was the heart of the movement against fascism in Britain? 10. What were the words that Robeson said on the radio to a great London rally? 11. When did Robeson go to Spain? 12. From which class of people did the fighters of the international Brigade come? 13. Why was Robeson's heart filled with admiration for the white Americans among the Lincoln men?

7. Fill in suitable prepositions. Вставьте пробужденные предлоги. Пешояндҳои мувофиқро гузоред.

1. ... Russia Paul Robeson felt ... the first time ... a full human being. 2. ... England he learned that the character ... nation is not determined ... the upper classes. 3. The songs we have lived ... the years are the best expression ... the heart of mankind. 4. As a young singer Robeson made friends ... Lawrence Brown. 5. ... the first five years Robeson sang only the songs ... his people. 6. These songs were close ... his heart. 7. The fascists attacking the Spanish Republic were supported ... Hitler and Mussolini. 8. The upper classes ... England did not care what would happen ... people ... Spain. 9. Many people took

part ... the antifascist movement ... members ... the middle class and people ... the arts and science. 10. Robeson, too, was drown ... the movement ... defence.... Spain. 11. He understood that the struggle... Negro rights was part... the struggle fascism. 12. He had a deep love ... white Americans and felt proud ... his own people as he sang ... his whole heart ... the heroic fighters ... the International Brigade.

8. Topics for Conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба.

1. Tell about Paul Robeson's musical activities.
2. Tell about Paul Robeson's political activities
3. Do you know any other outstanding fighter for peace?
4. Tell about him.

9. Have a press conference. Организуйте пресс-конференцию. Бо аъзоёни матбуот конференсия ташкил кунед.

One pupil is Paul Robeson the others are report who asks him questions about: the development of his musical career. 2) stay in England, 3) his stay in Spain, 4) his activities in America, 5) political views.

10. If you cannot find the answers to these questions, consult your dictionary. The first letters of each word are given. Если вы не сможете найти ответы на эти вопросы, обратитесь к словарю. Для подсказки приведены первые буквы каждого слова. Агар ба ин саволҳо ҷавоб дода натавонед ба луғат муроҷиат кунед. Аввали ҳар калима дода шудааст.

1. What is the very sweet thing used in tea and coffee, a cake? (su ...)
2. What do we call boys and girls who are at school? (sc ...)
3. What do we use when we want to rub out pencil line? (ru...)
4. What is the name of an insect which makes a web? (sp ...)
5. What is the name given to loud noise which comes after a flash of lightning? (thu ..)
6. What name is given to places which are all sand, quite dry and often very hot indeed? (de ...)
7. What do we call a man who gets his living by growing crops and raising cattle? (co ..)
8. What do we call a person who is fond of travelling? (tr ...)

Sayings

1. A quartet is where all four think that the other three can sing.
2. The best thing about popular songs is that they are not popular very long.

Jokes

A member of a military band came to the surgeon with throatache.

“Let me see your throat. Oh, that’s not so bad. You’ll be right in a day or two. I think you had better rest a little for week or so.” And with these words the surgeon gave me the sick-leave. A week later, the surgeon met the bandsman in the street. “How’s your throat?” he asked.

“It’s quite well, sir,” was the reply.

“That’s good,” said the surgeon. “You go back to your duty now. By the way, what instrument do you play in the band?” “The small drum, sir!” said the bandsman.

When Robeson Sings (Edith Segal)

When Paul, our Brother Robeson sings,
The giant in us rises to full height.
We stand refreshed astride the continent,
Our arms extended far beyond the seas.
We lean against our towering mountainsides,
And lift our heads to greet the clearing skies.
We toll the freedom bell the fathers tolled,
With steady pull we sway from shore to shore.
And everywhere folks rise to giant height,
To stand in friendship in a land of song.
To blend with rising nations of the world,
When Paul, our Brother Robeson sings!

11. Translate into Tajik or Russian Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

subway [ˈsʌbweɪ] = metro

document [ˈdɒkjumənt]

movie house [ˈmuːvɪːhaʊs] = cinema

attentively [əˈtentɪv] = care

panic [ˈpænɪk] = fully

A Meeting in the Night (After James Baldwin)

James Baldwin was born in 1924 and grew up in Harlem, New York. He has written a large number of books, the best known are: “Nobody Knows My Name”, “Another Country”, “Notes of a

Native Son". One of his most recent novels is "Tell Me How Long the Train's Been Gone" from which this passage has been taken. In recent years James Baldwin has become known as a fighter for Negro rights.

12. Read the following passage and find out by whom, when and why the following was said. Прочитайте следующий отрывок и узнайте, кем, когда и почему это было сказано. Порчаҳои зеринро хонед ва ёбед, ки он аз тарафи кӣ, кай ва барои чӣ гуфта шудааст.

1. I've got to get him home. 2. Keep your hands in the air. 3. I'm glad this happened while I was with you. 4. Are white people people?

Caleb and I began walking very fast, down the street, toward our home in Harlem. The subway station was near the movie house and the movie house was dark. We knew we were late; did not think we were that late. We were hurrying down the long road that led east to our house when we heard a car stop and were blinded by bright lights, and were pushed up against a wall.

"Turn around," a voice said. "And keep your hands in the air". We did as we were told. They were going to search us. A hand patted me all over my body. I hated every touch of it. Beside me, I heard Caleb catch his breath.

"Turn around," the voice said.

The great lights of the police car had gone out; I could see the car at the distance. Its doors were open. I was afraid to look at

Caleb, for I felt this would, somehow, be used against us. I looked at the two policemen, young, white and self-important. They turned a flashlight on us and looked us over carefully.

"Where are you boys going?"

"Home," Caleb said. I could hear his breathing. "We live in the next house." And he gave the address.

Now I heard the effort Caleb was making to fight down the rising panic. "We just took my girl to the subway station. We were at the movies." And then he added bitterly. "This here's my brother. I look after him. I've got to get him home. He's only ten years old."

"What movie did you see?" And Caleb told them.

"You got any documents?"

"My brother doesn't. I do."

"Let's see it."

They looked at his wallet attentively, looked at us, handed it back. “Get on home,” one of them said. They got into their car and drove off.

“Thanks,” Caleb said. “Come on, let’s go home, little Leo. - You were properly frightened.”

“Yes,” I said. “Were you?”

That’s right, I was frightened.”

“You were calm enough,” I said.

We were in our street, near our house. He smiled. Then he said, “Leo, I’ll tell you something. I’m glad this happened. It had to happen one day, and I’m glad it happened while I was with; you – of course I’m glad you were with me, too. They didn’t arrest me only because you were there.”

“What for?”

“Because I’m black,” Caleb said. “That’s what for.”

I said nothing, because what he said was true, and I knew it. It seemed, now, that I had always known it, though I had never been able to say it. I was filled with an awful wonder; it made me hurt inside so that I could not speak. ‘Because you’re black’ I tried to think, but couldn’t; I only saw the policeman, those eyes with the dangerous look in them, and felt those hands all over me. Were they people? “Caleb,” I asked, “are white people – people? People like us.

He looked down at me. His face was very strange and sad. It was a face I had never seen before. We were in the house now, and we climbed a few more stairs, very slowly. Then, “All I can tell you, Leo, is – well, they don’t think we are.”

James Baldwin [dʒeɪmzˈbɔːldwɪn] – Джеймс Болдвин

bright [braɪt] – тобон; дурахшон; яркий; блестящий; светящийся

Harlem [hɑːləm] – Гарлем (нохия дар Нью-Йорке;)

search [səːʃ] – кофтан; чустучӯ кардан; искать

notes [nəʊts] – қайдҳо; заметка; запись

native [neɪtɪv] – тахчойӣ; муқимӣ; родной; местный

passage [ˈpæsɪdʒ] – гузаргоҳ; проезд; проход

Caleb [ˈkeɪləb] – Кайлеб

flashlight [flæʃlaɪt] – фонуси барқӣ; сигнальный огонь

policeman [pəˈliːsmən] – корманди полис; полицейский

blind [blaɪnd] – нобино; очиз; слепой

breathe [briːð] – нафас кашидан; дышать; вдыхать

Why We Are Marching (From a CND leaflet)

Aldermaston is the factory of death, where Britain's H-bombs are made – bombs that can destroy whole cities, poison the people who remain alive, prepare for children the future life of misery. These are not weapons of war, but equipment for mass murder.

Wethersfield in Essex is a NATO base, where aircraft stand ready for nuclear war. These bases cannot defend us; they make Britain a priority target if war should come.

London is our capital city, where Government and Parliament make decisions that mean life and death for us all and where we must raise our voices if we want a change.

Everybody the world over wants disarmament and peace. Somebody must have the courage and sense to give a new lead we want Britain to give that lead by renouncing nuclear weapons, bases and policies.

This is why our marches will start on Good Friday from Aldermaston and from Wethersfield and meet on Easter Monday in Whitehall.

13. Answer the following questions. Ответь на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. Where are Britain's H-bombs made? 2. What is Wethersfield in Essex? 3. Where are decisions of great importance made?

What are the British people fighting for? 5. What are they fighting against? 6. Where do the British peace fighters march?

**CND = Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament – Маъракаи ҳалъи
силоҳи ҳастай - движение за ядерное разоружение**

campaign [kæm'peɪn] – маърака; кампания

leaflet ['li:flət] – варақа; листочек

death [deθ] – марг; смерть

H-bomb ['eɪtbɒm] – бомба

poison ['pɔɪz(ə)n] – захр; отравы; яд

weapon ['wepən] – яроқ; оружие

equipment [i'kwɪpmənt] – таҷҳизот; оборудование

murder [mɜ:də] – куштор; убийство

defend [dɪ'fend] – ҳимоя кардан; защищать

priority target [praɪ'ɔrəti tə:ɡɪt] – мақсади аввалиндараҷа, вазифаҳои аввалиндараҷа; приоритетная цель, первоочередная задача

Parliament ['pa:ləmənt] – парлумон; парламент

decision [dɪ'sɪʒn] – қарор; решение

disarmament [dɪs'a:məmənt] – бейароккунӣ; демилитаризация; разоружение

courage ['kʌrɪdʒ] – ҷасорат, мардонагӣ; мужество, отвага

sense [sen(t)s] – ҳиссиёт, чувство; ощущение

give a lead [ɡɪv ə'led] – мисол будан; показывать пример

renounce [rɪ'nəʊns] – даст кашидан; отказать

policy ['pɒlɪsɪ] – сиёсат; политика

LESSON 5. SPORTS

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салохият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда таъвонад.

moment ['məʊmənt]	complete [kəm'pli:t]
joy [dʒɔɪ]	storm [stɔ:m]
while [(h)waɪl]	suspicious [sə'spɪʃəs]
foolish ['fu:lɪʃ]	chance [tʃɑ:n(t)s]
gain [ɡeɪn]	suggest [sə'dʒest]
guess [ɡes]	howl [haʊl]
doubt [daʊt]	anyway ['eniweɪ]
awful ['ɔ:f(ə)l]	wild [waɪld]
dream [dri:m]	rub [rʌb]
handkerchief ['hæŋkətʃɪ:f]	enthusiastic [ɪn,θju:zɪ'æstɪk]
hell [hel]	low [ləʊ]

FOOTBALL GIRL

"It's cold **in this stadium**," said the girl behind me.

She had a slow little voice, clear and sweet. She had just arrived at her seat, and with her was a long-legged student in a black fur coat. They were late. The game had begun some moments before.

I knew what **she looked like** though I did not turn around. I had watched her coming up the steps. Everybody had watched her. She was **that sort of girl**. Little she was, in a coat of soft brown fur, with a wide brown belt. The collar of the coat was high and very large.

She was very young. She could not have been more than sixteen or seventeen. A beautiful child, with black curly hair, a spoiled mouth, and dark blue eyes. The eyes were older than the girl. They were grown-up with self-assurance. The boy was deeply in love with her. He looked it, coming up the steps – though he tried hard not to show, he looked almost foolishly proud. Now, when she remarked that it was cold in the stadium, he repeated anxiously, “Cold?”

“Wait,” he said, “Wait. I’ll get this old coat around you. You aren’t be cold with this old thing around you.”

“My face will be,” she replied.

On the field a halfback had **gained** thirteen yards.

“Lift your feet a minute,” said the boy, “while I tuck it under, there! How’s that? Okay?”

“I guess so.”

“Warm enough now?”

“Maybe I will be in a minute,” she said **doubtfully**.

In a minute she said, “I’m **awfully** cold. It’s because of sitting on this icy cold stone.”

“Well, here,” said the boy. “Sit on one of these programs. Get up a minute. Now try that.”

“That’s better,” said the girl. “And let’s put the other one under where my feet are, hmmm, Jake? Because my feet always practically freeze.”

“They’re so little,” the boy said, bending down to her feet. “There now!” he added in a moment. “Now you’re all right.”

“Um-hmm. Now I am. What’s the score?”

“Nothing to nothing.”

“Oh,” said the girl, “then we’re not really late. You kept saying we were going to be late.”

“Well, we were a little.”

“I’m never late,” the girl said **dreamily**.

The boy did not answer. “Watch that pass!” he shouted loudly instead. “Watch it!”

“Look,” said the girl. “Before you get all excited, may I please have one of your cigarettes?”

“Ye-eah!” the boy was shouting. “Get in! Give in! Ye-eah! What’s **the trouble, baby?**” he added softly.

“I want a cigarette.”

“Oh, gosh,” said the boy, “now where did I ... Wait a minute. “Ye-eah!” he cried again, but faintly now.

He began muttering. “Keys,” he said. “Lighter. Handkerchief. Another handkerchief. Powder – here’s your powder, Judy. And here’s your purse. But where in hell are the cigarettes?”

“I’ll look.”

“I never saw so many pockets.”

The cigarettes were found at last, but the joy was not end. The lipstick, it appeared, was missing still, “It was the one I bought in Paris,” the girl said sadly. ‘And, now it’s gone goodness knows where through a hole in your pocket.

“But I tell you it couldn’t have, love! This is a new coat!”

“It was a new lipstick. It was a ...”

“Here it is!” he cried happily. “I’ve got it!”

“Oh, good. I’m so glad.”

“Here, take it,” said the boy. “Don’t you want it?”

“Uh-uh,” said the girl. “Not now. I just wanted to be sure it wasn’t lost. ... Look, Jake. This lighter **won’t light in this** wind,”

“Sure it will. Give it here.”

“I told you,” the girl said in a moment. “Haven’t you got some matches?”

Matches were borrowed and many were scratched one after the other. This took some time, and a touchdown was **meanwhile**; made by the visiting team. In the storm of voices the girl’s voice was lost to me. I thought she was saying, “Try putting your head inside your coat and lighting it, why don’t you?” But I could not sure.

The first quarter was soon over. The boy noticed it with surprise.

“Say,” he said. “It’s the quarter already.”

“Oh, is it?” said the girl. “Well, now’s our chance **to fix** this old thing. I didn’t tell you, but I’ve been getting colder and colder by the minute!

“Say! You haven’t!” “Oh, it’ll be all right when we fix it,” she said “**The trouble** is that it’s over me and then tucked under, instead of under me and then wrapped over. Do you see what I mean?”

He did. He was able **to fix** it in a little less than four minutes. “There!” said the girl. “That’s great! I won’t be cold now. ... Oh, look,

they're playing down our end of the field."

"Sure they are!" said the boy. "And we're going to score – we're going to sco-o-re. There you GO!" he **howled**. "There you – tough, tough! Hard luck. Red, old boy! Next time!" He beat his hands together once, making a loud noise. "Come on, TEAM!" "Jake," said the girl. "I smell something burning. What?" "I smell something burning. I think the coat **must be on fire** I think", said the girl, "we must have wrapped my cigarette up in it."

It appeared after a **wild** moment that she was partly right, though only partly. It was her cigarette, but it was the coat of the **gentleman next her**.

"What a time!" she sighed when it was all over and the boy was carefully **wrapping her up** again. "After that, I'll have to have my make-up, please, Jake. The powder and the lipstick."

"You look all right," he said. "You look great."

"Oh, no, I don't. I'm hot all over. Such a terrible, nasty old man I never saw in all my days," she said clearly.

"Hush!" said the boy. "Here! Here're your things."

"And may I have your hanky? Because mine must have blown away."

Her next remark was about a **cheerleader**. It was her most **enthusiastic** remark so far, though it was short. It was:

"Oh, look! Who's he?"

"Who?"

"That cheerleader."

"Oh, him," said the boy. "I believe his name's Adams or something. Or maybe it's Andrews. Something like that."

"But I want to know, Jake!"

"What for?" Jake suddenly asked **suspiciously**.

"I just do. Listen, wouldn't he be in the program somewhere?" The boy did not think so.

"Well, look and see, silly!" the girl **suggested** sweetly, adding. "You can take the one that's under my feet. It isn't keeping them a bit warm anyway."

Looking for the cheerleader **occupied the boy for quite a long** time. He said nothing, but he was turning the pages fast. She had explained that she herself would look through the program "only my hands would freeze if I didn't keep them in my pockets."

There were several other things the girl wanted. Once she sneezed,

a tiny sneeze like a little cat's, and the boy was asked for to **produce his handkerchief** again in a hurry. "And the powder again, too," said the girl. "Oh, and the lipstick! Because look, it's all rubbed off on your handkerchief."

A little later she said suddenly, "I'm hungry."

The boy stopped turning pages. "Hungry?" he said. "But you just had lunch!"

"I didn't have anything but that old salad."

"Well," said the boy, "can you wait till between the halves. I **can get you a sausage** or something then."

"I suppose I can if I have to," the girl said. "But I am awfully hungry."

«Well, shall I go out now and try to find something? I will if you say so, only you'll **be all alone**»

"No," answered the girl. "I'll wait."

"But I'm awfully hungry," she added low, a moment later.

"Smoke another cigarette," said the boy. "Maybe that'll help."

"All right," said the girl. "You light one for me."

The scratching of matches began again.

"Look at that child," "the girl said," "in the middle of it." "Where?"

"Over there. Climbing all over his father's lap. Can't you see him?"

It was a little red-faced boy about five years old, with his father's student cap in his hand. "Imagine bringing a child that age to a football match!" the girl said. "Imagine the trouble!"

The youth agreed with her. That was clear from his voice,

"Can you beat it?" he demanded seriously.

(After K. Brush)

What a time! – чи замоне; какое время!

sigh [sai] – нафас, вздох

nasty ['nɑ:sti] – муқобил; нафратовар; отвратительный

hush [hʌʃ] – хомӯшӣ, оромӣ; тишина, молчание

hanky ['hæŋki] – даструймол, рӯймолча; носовой платок

cheerleader ['ʃiə,li:də] – чирлидер

so far [səu 'fɑ:] – то ҳол; до сих пор, пока

sneeze [sni:z] – атса задан; чиханье, чихать

silly ['sɪli] – аҳмақона; аблаҳона; глупый; дурацкий

page [peɪdʒ] – саҳифа, страница

1. Read, make transcription and translate the following words -
Прочитайте, сделайте транскрипцию и переведите следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед, транскрипсия ва тарҷума кунед.

around = round	pass
cigarette	practically
lanky	yard 0.90 metres
handkerchief	baby = a small child
make-up	lighter = a thing we use to light
though = although	cigarettes with
Okay	

2. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

have, begin, be, know, come, turn, say, sit, get up, put, do, keep, see, find, buy, give, tell, take, make, lose, think, mean, burn, smell, blow, freeze, rub, stop, agree, beat, let, wash.

3. Translate the following words into Tajik or Russian. Переведите следующие слова на таджикский или русский язык. Калимаҳои зеринро ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Noun	Adjective	Noun	Adjective
joy	joyful	doubt	doubtful
dream	dreamy	curl	curly
fur	furry	fool	foolish
suspicion	suspicious	anxiety	anxious
enthusiasm	enthusiast		

4. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. A **moment** is a very, very short period of time. Please wait a **moment**. The game had begun some **moments** before they arrived.

2. A **foolish** person acts like a fool. It is foolish of you to go out without a coat on a rainy day. It is foolish to put on warm clothes on a hot day.

3. **Gain** means to get something; to win, to make progress. On the football field a halfback had **gained** thirteen yards. Our team gained a big victory. At the sports camp our boys **gained** much experience.

4. **To guess** means to suppose something. In American English it is a synonym for 'think'. Children like to **guess riddle**. The pupils were able **to guess** the **meanings** all the words the teacher explained to them in English. **I guess** (= think) he knows you (American English).

5. We are **in doubt** when we are not sure. **I doubt** whether he will receive the letter tomorrow. I do not doubt that he will win. You can believe the story; there is no doubt about it. Take your raincoat with you, the weather looks very doubtful.

6. In everyday language people often use '**awful**' instead 'very' or 'very great'. It's **awfully cold** today. I'm **awful** sorry I didn't meet them. It was awfully nice of you to see them. The machine made an **awful** noise.

7. **A dream** is something one seems to see or experience during sleep. When I woke up I was glad that the accident had on been **a dream**. **To dream** also means to make pictures about future in one's mind. **He dreamed** of becoming a doctor. The girl spoke **dreamily**. She spoke as if she were half-asleep.

8. You need a **handkerchief** when you have a cold in the head. When I have a running nose, I use several **handkerchiefs** day. The girl stopped crying; she took a **handkerchief** from her pocket and dried her eyes.

9. **Hell** is used to express anger or a very high degree of something. Where in hell are the cigarettes? What the hell does he want? He ran **like hell**, he ran very fast. It was cold like hell, it was very cold. We must work **like hell** if we want to finish in time.

10. **Complete** means whole. Her happiness was **complete**, was quite happy. I completely forgot about it. I quite forgot about it.

11. **Joy** is great gladness. **To my great** joy she accepted my invitation. The children jumped **for joy** when they were given a dog.

12. You sit down and have a rest, **meanwhile** I'll make tea. While you have a rest, I'll make tea. Lighting the cigarettes in the wind took a lot of time, meanwhile the visiting team had made a touch-down.

13. **A storm** is a very strong wind, often together with the rain or snow. Ships are in danger when there is a storm in the sea. I couldn't hear the girl's words in **the storm** of voice.

14. People were shouting so loud that I couldn't hear the girl's words.

15. **A chance** is an opportunity. When we went to Moscow we had **a chance** to go to the Bolshoi Theatre.

16. In American English '**fix**' can be used instead of a number of other verbs in the meaning of 'get something', 'done', 'arrange',

‘organize’, ‘prepare’, ‘put something in order’, ‘repair’, etc. Peter promised to **fix** my bike. The man **fixed** my watch in half an hour. If you need the tickets, I can **fix** it.

17. A **howl** is a long and loud cry. Wolves and dogs **howl**. The boys **howled** with laughter. The spectators **howled** as the halfback rushed forward. The wind **howled** through the trees.

18. **Wild** means violent, stormy, too excited. What **wild** weather we are having! There were sounds of **wild** laughter. He was **wild** with anger. He ran towards us, moving his arms **wildly**. Animals that live and plants grow in natural conditions are also called **wild** (**wild** flowers, **wild** strawberries, **wild** animals).

19. We are **enthusiastic** when we feel great admiration for or great interest in something. The people at the stadium shouted **enthusiastically**.

20. We are **suspicious** when we have a feeling that something is wrong. This plan looks **suspicious** to me. He looked at us **suspiciously**. This man is a **suspicious** character.

21. We **suggest** something when we make a **suggestion**. My friend **suggested** going to the football match. He **suggested** that we should go home.

22. In a negative sentence ‘**anyway**’ means ‘not in any possible way’. You needn’t ask him, he doesn’t know it **anyway**. You may take the coat; it doesn’t keep me warm **anyway**. In an affirmative sentence ‘**anyway**’ means ‘at least’. I think he’ll be glad to see us. **Anyway**, he said he would be. I don’t know whether I can get the tickets. **Anyway**, I’ll try.

23. **To rub** means to move something backwards and forwards against something. The dog **rubbed** itself against my leg. You won’t get your hands clean if you don’t **rub** them hard.

24. **Low** means not high or not loud. This chair is too high for the little boy, give him a **lower** seat. The girl spoke in such a low voice that it was difficult to understand her.

Analogy

1. Foot is to feet as tooth is to ...
2. ... is to stadium as actor is to theatre.
3. Child is to cry as wild animal is to ...
4. Sportsman is to ... as ... is to teacher.
5. Drop is to dropped as rub is to ...
6. Famous is to ... as fearless is to brave.

7. Success is to . . . as joy is to sadness.
8. ... is to sportsmen as crew is to sailors.

A Dialogue

- Hello, Farrukh!
- Hello Sobir! Where are you going?
- I'm going to a skating contest.
- Where is the contest?
- At the Central Stadium. It begins at three.
- Hurry up, Sobir, It's already half past two. You'll be late for the contest if you don't hurry.
- No, Mehri. I shan't be late. The stadium is quite near. I can run there in a few minutes.
- Yes, Sobir. I remember that you've well at running. I suppose you're good at skating, too.
- Of course, I am. Mehri, I'm good at sport. I like football most of all, but my favourite winter sport is skating.
- I've seen skating contests on television, I watched the World Championship on television. It was very interesting.
- But I've never been to a skating contest.
- Come with me, Mehri! Let's go to the contest. I'm sure you'll like it.
- I'm sorry, Sobir. I can't go to the contest. I'm going to the swimming pool today. I like swimming. Swimming is my favourite sport.
- Are you good at swimming, Mehri?
- Yes, Sir, I am. My trainer is very pleased with my progress and so am I.
- Where is the swimming pool?
- The swimming pool is in the park. It is near the Central Stadium.
- Very good, Mehri. I shall walk with you to the park.

Translate into Tajik or Russian

1. She was that sort of girl. 2. She could not have been more than sixteen. 3. I'll get this old coat around you. 4. You won't be cold with this around you. 5. In a minute she said ... 6. You kept saying you were late. 7. What's the trouble? 8. This lighter won't light in this wind. 9. The girl's voice was lost to me. 10. I've been getting colder by the minute. 11. I think the coat must be on fire. 12. We must have wrapped my cigarette up in it. 13. I'll have to have my make-up. 14. Or maybe

it's Andrews. Something like that. 15. Looking for the cheerleader occupied the boy for a long time. 16. I suppose I can if I have to.

5. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. Did people notice the girl immediately? Why? 2. What did the girl look like? Describe her. 3. What did the boy look like? 4. Why did the boy look proud? 5. Did the boy and the girl arrive at the stadium in time for the match? 6. Why do you think they were late? 7. Do you think the girl was interested in football? 8. Do you often watch football matches? 9. Would the boy enjoy the match? 10. How would you have acted in the boy's place? 11. How should the girl have acted? 12. Mention the things that the girl should not have done. 13. Are you interested in football? Why? 14. Has anything special ever happened when you were in a stadium?

6. Put in the correct prepositions. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Пешояндҳои дурустро гузоред

1. Heard the girl sitting ... me remark that it was cold ... the stadium. 2. The girl was dressed ... a coat ... soft brown fur, a wide belt. 3. ... this coat ... you'll be warm ... a minute. 4. ... the middle ... the match the girl found that the coat was ... fire. 5. Look ... that little boy climbing all ... his father's lap. 6. Imagine bringing a child ... a football match. 7. It was clear ... the boy's voice that he agreed ... his girl-friend. 8. If you wait the halves, I'll get a sausage ... you. 9. Are the names ... all the players given ... the program? 10. The boy was proud ... his girl-friend.

7. Retell the story from the point of view of. Перескажите рассказ с точки зрения... Ҳикояро аз нуқтаи назари..... нақл кунед.

the girl a) as it was in the story, b) she is glad she went to the stadium and she is pleased with the way her boy-friend treats her, c) she is displeased and sorry about having gone to the match with her boy-friend.

the boy a) as it was in the story, b) he defends [di'fendz] his girl-friend and is sorry that she had to suffer so much at the match, c) he is displeased with his girl-friend and decides never to take bet along to a match again.

a gentleman sitting behind them who could not watch the match because of them and is greatly displeased.

an elderly lady who likes the girl awfully and defends her in every possible way.

8. Characterize. Охарактеризуйте. Тавсиф кунед.

1) the boy a) from a neutral ['nju:itrɪ] point of view, b) thinking him a fool to go with that girl, c) from an admiring point of view.

2) the girl a) from a neutral point of view, b) from a critical point of view. c) from an admiring point of view,

9. Make up a dialogue between two onlookers one of whom likes the girl and criticizes the boy, the other likes the boy and criticizes the girl. Составьте диалог между двумя зрителями, одному из которых нравится девочка и не нравится мальчик, другому нравится мальчик и не нравится девочка. Муколамаро дар байни ду бинандагоне, ки яке писаронро дӯст медоранду духтаронро тасвир мекунанд, дигаре духтаронро дӯст медоранду писаронро тасвир мекунанд, созед.

10. Topics for Conversation. Тема для беседы. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба

1. What is your favourite sport? 2. What is your favorite form of athletics? 3. Is enough attention given to sport in your school? 4. Do you think that more or less time should be given to sport in school? 5. Sport and its effect on health. 6. What are the qualities of a good sportsman? 7. How would you answer someone who said that sport was a waste of time? 8. Which do you think is our most popular national sport? 9. What do you think are our country's chances in the next Olympic Games? 10. Which do you prefer – to be present at a sports event or to watch it on television? Why?

Proverbs

1. A sound mind in a sound body.
2. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
3. Strike while the iron is hot.
4. He that never climbed never felt.

Quotations

1. He that falls in love with himself will have no rivals. (B. Franklin)
2. Trifles make perfection and perfection is not a trifle. (Michelangelo)

Jokes

The teacher was giving her class a lecture on mottoes, and remarked that she wished the class to memorize the motto “It is better to give than to receive”.

A small boy cried out, “Yes, Miss, my father says lie has always used that as his motto in business.”

“Oh, how noble of him! What is his business?”

“He’s a boxer, Miss.”

*

Instructor: What will you do if you find your brakes out of online?

Beginner: I’ll try to bump into something which is not very expensive.

*

A sergeant was once instructing his soldiers. One of them asked, “What must I do if the parachute does not open when I jump out?”

Sergeant: “Oh, that’s all right. You just bring it back and you’ll get another one.”

sound [saund] – овоз, садо; звук; шум

roll [rəʊl] – гелондан; катить; везти

moss [mɒs] – ушна; лишайник, плаун

iron [ˈaɪən] – оҳан; железо

rival [ˈraɪv(ə)] – рақиб; ҳариф; соперник

Franklin [ˈfræŋkln] – Франклин

trifle [traɪfl] – майда-чуйда; мелочь

perfection [pəˈfekʃ(ə)n] – тақомул; камолот; совершенство

lecture [ˈlektʃə] – лексия; лекция

motto [ˈmɒtəʊ] – шиор; девиз, лозунг

memorize [mem(ə)raɪz] – ба хотир овардан; запоминать

noble [ˈnəʊbl] – бошараф, олиҳиммат; благородный

Instructor [ɪnˈstrʌktə] – дастурдиҳанда; инструктор

brake [breɪk] – танаффус; перерыв

sergeant [ˈsɜːdʒ(ə)nt] – сержант

instruct [ɪnˈstrʌkt] – дастур додан; инструктировать

parachute [ˈpærəʃuːt] – парашют

Easy reading

Football

Football is, I suppose, the most popular game in England; you have only to go to one of the important matches to see this. Rich and

poor, young and old, you can see them all there, shouting and cheering for one side or the other.

One of the most surprising things about football in England is the great knowledge of the game which even the smallest boys seem to have. They can tell you the names of the players in most of the important teams; they have photographs of them and know the results of large numbers of matches. They can tell you who they expect to win such and such a match, and their opinion are usually as valuable as those of men three or four times their.

Most schools in England take football seriously – much more seriously than nearly all European schools, where lessons are all important, and games left for private arrangements. In England it is believed that education is not only a matter of filling a boy's head with facts in the classroom; education also means character training; and one of the best ways of training character is by means of games, especially team games, instead of working selfishly for himself alone. The school arranges lots of games and matches for its pupils. Football is a good team game, it is an exercise for the body, it needs skill and quick brain, it is popular and it is cheap! As a result, it is English school's favourite game in winter.

11. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1 Is football popular in Tajikistan? 2. Do you know the best football teams in Tajikistan? 3. Who is your favourite football player? 4. Are team games good for character training? 5. Give five reasons why football is the favourite game at English schools.

Read with a dictionary

Derby Day

Derby Day is a well-known popular event in England. It is the day of the best-known horse-race in the United Kingdom. It is held on Epsom Downs, about ten miles from the centre of London, which is a very well-known race-course. There is plenty of open ground at Epsom and you may watch the race from here for nothing. But you may also pay for a seat in a special stand.

There are a number of races on Derby Day. Most people, however, come to see the main event. This is the actual Derby race which is usually held at about three o'clock in the afternoon. Some of the finest

race-horses in the world take part in the race and each horse is ridden by its owner's jockey.

A jockey is a professional rider who wears the special colours of the owner of the horse.

The horses parade in front of the stands before the race. Then they line up ready for the start; the starter gives the signal and away they go. The great crowds of people shout and cheer.

The horses race twice round the course which is one and a half miles.

Sometimes the race is very close. One horse may be only the length of a horse's neck in front of another. When two horses pass winning post at exactly the same moment, it is called a dead Heat bet a great deal of money on the result of the race. Large sums of money are won by some people but others lose sum as well.

In addition to the races there is another attraction on Epsom Downs on Derby Day. This is a large fair. Here there are all of entertainments for the large crowds. People eat and drink enjoy themselves. Among the many interesting characters to see on Epsom Downs are the gypsies. They come every year tell fortunes and add colour to the scenes of Derby Day.

12. Make transcription and translate into Tajik or Russian. Сделайте транскрипцию следующих слов и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Транскрипция кунед ва онро ба забони тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

jockey	horse-race
parade	popular
signal	scene
post	well- know
attraction	

13. Complete the following sentences. Дополните следующие предложение. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. Derby Day is a popular sports event in ... 2. It is held on... 3. On Derby Day there are a number of ... 4. The main race begins 5. Derby horses parade ... 6. The race course is 7. When two horses pass the winning post at exactly the same moment, it is called a ... 8. There is also a large ... on Epsom Downs on ... 9. The gypsies come to the fair on Epsom Downs to ... and they add colour to the ...

LESSON 6. BERNARD SHAW

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи

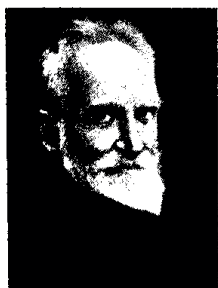
Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда таъвонад.

playwright ['pleɪraɪt]
representative [ˌrepriˈzentətɪv]
literature ['lɪt(ə)rəʃə]
author ['ɔːθə]
journalist ['dʒəːn(ə)lɪst]
accept [ək'sept]
give up ['gɪv 'ʌp]
fine arts [faɪn 'ɑːts]
in spite of [spaɪt]

title [taɪtl]
witty ['wɪti]
brilliant ['brɪljənt]
appreciate [ə'priːʃiət]
correspond [kɒri'spɒnd]
lively ['laɪvli]
triumph [traɪəmf]
vivid ['vɪvɪd]
powerful ['paʊəf(ə)l]

GEORGE BERNARD SHAW (1856 – 1950)

George Bernard Shaw is of one the greatest **playwrights** and one of the most important **representatives** of critical realism of English literature.



He was born in Dublin, Ireland in a poor middle-class family. At the age of twenty Shaw came to London. He was a tall, young man with blue eyes and sandy hair. At that time his favorite author was Shelley, atheist and revolutionary. In London Shaw became a **journalist**.

Between 1879 and 1883 he wrote five long novels, which no publisher would **accept**. He **gave up** writing novels.

Shaw **first became known for his** articles on fine art exhibitions, theatrical performances and concerts, which were published in newspapers and magazines.

Shaw wanted to **make his ideas clear** to other. So he began writing plays through which he could popularize his ideas best. He used the stage to criticize the vices of capitalism. His road to success was a difficult one. He was famous abroad long before he was famous in

England. It was only in 1904 that one of Shaw's first plays was first performed in London West End.

The first performance of his play "Widowers Houses in 1802 was quite a sensation. He was attacked both by the public and by the critics, who called him cynical. But **in spite of** this, Shaw continued to attack injustice and hypocrisy all his life.

In 1899 he published some of his plays under **the title** of "Plays Unpleasant". It is quite clear for whom these plays were unpleasant.

Shaw's plays are discussion plays. They are full of **witty** paradoxes and **brilliant** dialogues. Many of Shaw's plays have long, prefaces in which the author expresses his own views on one or another problem. So his prefaces are almost as important as the plays themselves.

"When you carry your experiment to its final **triumph**, he wrote after his visit, "and I know you will, we in the West, who are still playing at Socialism, will have to follow your steps."

Not long before his death he spoke of his visit to the Soviet Union as the most vivid of his memories.

Shaw went on working almost to the time of his death. Although he was ninety-four years old when he died, his mind remained clear and **powerful** to the end.

Bernard Shaw is widely known and very popular in the Soviet Union. His plays "Pygmalion", "Widowers Houses", "Mrs Warren's Profession" and others are always a success on many stages.

1. Read and translate. Прочитайте и переведите. Хонед ва тарчума кунед.

critical realism ['krɪtɪk(ə)l 'rɪəlɪz(ə)m]

atheist ['eɪθɪst]

a revolutionary [rev(ə)'luːʃ(ə)n(ə)rɪ]

publisher [pʌblɪʃə]

article ['ɑːtɪkl]

theatrical performance [θɪ'ætrɪk(ə)l pə'fɔːmən(t)s]

to popularize [pəpjəl(ə)raɪz]

to criticize ['krɪtɪsaɪz]

capitalism ['kæpɪt(ə)lɪz(ə)m]

sensation [sen'seɪʃ(ə)n]

critic ['krɪtɪk]

paradox ['pærədɒks]

problem ['prɒbləm]

culture ['kʌltʃə]

2. Translate the word in bold types - Переведите слово жир-ным шрифтом – Калимаҳои сиёҳ кардашударо тарҷума кунед.

1. A **playwright** is a writer who writes plays. Shakespeare and Shaw are two famous English **playwrights**.

2. Shaw is an important **representative** of English literature. Shaw's works show clearly what good English literature is like.

3. **Literature** means books that are valued as works of a people who want to heroine writer's often study languages and **literature** at the university.

4. An **author** is a writer. Mark 'Twain is an American author. He is an American writer.

5. A **journalist** is a writer who writes for newspapers and magazines. Many writers of novels and plays start as journalists.

6. To **accept** means to receive what one is given or offered. He **accepted** my invitation. I gladly **accepted** the job I was offered.

7. To **give up** means to stop doing something. The doctor told the patient **to give up** smoking. He told him not to smoke any more. Shaw **gave up** writing novels. He wrote no more novels.

8. Works of **fine arts** are works produced by artists. You can see works of important artists at museums **of fine arts**.

9. An **art exhibition** is a show of works of art. What works did you like best at the **exhibition** in the art museum?

10. **Magazines** are books that contain stories and writings by different authors and appear after certain periods of time once a week, once a month, etc.

11. They went out **in spite** of the rain. Although it rained, they still went out; the rain could not keep them from going out.

12. The **title** of a book is its name, which is printed on the cover. "David Copperfield" is the **title** of a well-known novel by Charles Dickens.

13. A **witty**, person can express his ideas in a clever and funny way. Shaw's plays are full of witty remarks.

14. **Brilliant** means excellent, admirable, shining. Shaw's plays are full of **brilliant** dialogues. They are full of excellent, witty dialogues, which are extremely interesting. It was a **brilliant** summer morning. It was a very sunny morning.

15. We say that we **appreciate** a book, a film, a work of art, a person's help, etc. If we understand its value and are extremely happy about it. We all appreciate a holiday after a year of hard work.

16. My sister **corresponds** with children in different countries. She has pen-friends in several countries from whom she gets letters and to whom she writes herself.

17. A **lively** person is full of life and spirit. We had a **lively** discussion of the book. Everybody was greatly interested and expressed his opinion of the book.

18. **Triumph** means success or victory. Shaw believed in the final **triumph** of Socialism.

19. Vivid means clear and lively. I have a **vivid** memory of the event. I remember the event clearly, I shan't forget it easily.

20. Shaw had a **powerful** mind to the very end. He had a strong mind, he did not forget things and he understood everything.

3. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

bear, come, become, write, accept, give up, know, publish want, begin, perform, attack, call, continue, express, remain, take visit, carry, play, follow, speak, go on, work, die.

4. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или на русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. Shaw is one of the greatest representatives of critical realism. 2. Novels which no publisher would accept. 3. Plays through which he could popularize his ideas best. 4. His road to success was a difficult one. 5. It was only in 1904 that one of Shaw's plays was performed in London. 6. He was attacked both by public and by the critics. 7. Shaw was interested not only in the literature of Russia. 8. When you carry your experiment to its final triumph. 9. We will have to follow your steps.

5. Complete the following sentences. Дополните следующие предложения. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. George Bernard Shaw was born ...
2. At the age of twenty Shaw was a tall...
3. He wrote his first five novels between ...
4. He first became known for ...
5. In his plays he criticized ...
6. Shaw was famous abroad long before ...
7. After the first performance of "Widowers Houses" he attacked both by ...
8. Shaw's plays often have long ...

9. He greatly admired the Russian ...
10. He had most vivid memories of his visit to ...
11. Shaw died at the age of ...
12. Shaw's most popular plays are ...

6. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. Where was Shaw born? 2. What is the capital of Ireland? 3. Were his parents rich? 4. When did Shaw come to London? 5. Describe his appearance. Was he a small man? 6. Who was his favourite author? Why? 7. What work did Shaw do in London at first? 8. Why did he give up writing novels? 9. What did he first become known for? 10. Why did he begin writing plays? 11. Did he become famous immediately? 12. How was his first play received? 13. What did Shaw attack all his life? 14. Under what title did he publish some of his plays? 15. What kind of plays are Shaw's plays? 16. What did Shaw think of the Soviet Union? 17. Do we stage his plays? 18. Have you seen any of his plays? 19. What plays by Shaw have you read? 20. What are his most popular plays?

7. Fill in the suitable words (representative, magazine, in spite of, title, give author, fine arts, accept, exhibition, triumph, powerful, brilliant, appreciate, vivid, lively, correspond, journalist, literature, playwright). Вставьте пропущенные слова (representative, magazine, in spite of, title, give author, fine arts, accept, exhibition, triumph, powerful, brilliant, appreciate, vivid, lively, correspond, journalist, literature, playwright). Калимаҳои мувофиқро гузоред (representative, magazine, in spite of, title, give author, fine arts, accept, exhibition, triumph, powerful, brilliant, appreciate, vivid, lively, correspond, journalist, literature, playwright).

1. When his novels were not published, he ... writing them. 2. I offered the boy some money, but he would not ... 3. Who is your favourite... 4. Shakespeare is one of the most famous of English ... 5. How often do you visit ... of fine arts. 6. The United State of America is a ... country, it is one of the great power. 7. Shaw's plays are full of ... paradoxes. 8. His dialogue are... 9. Though he was 94 when he died, his mind remained clear and ... to the end. 10. Most people have ... memories their childhood. 11. What was the ... of the book that you bought last week? 12. I am interested in English language and ... 13. Why did you ... taking piano lessons, you started making such good progress? 14. My brother works as a ... he writes articles for newspapers.

8. Give opposites of the following words. Дайте антонимы следующих слов. Ба калимаҳои зерин антонимҳо гузоред.

difficult, longer, unpleasant, tall, great, early, weak, old, high, poor, wrong, badly, hotter, glad, unhappy.

9. Use the correct prepositions where necessary. При необходимости вместо точек вставьте предлог. Ба ҷойҳои зарурӣ пешояндҳои мувофиқро гузоред.

1. This journalist is interested ... Russian literature. 2. He was my favourite author ... that time. 3. He is known ... his famous articles ... fine art exhibitions. 4. Do you know anything.... the most important representatives ... critical realism English literature? 5. Though the public attacked him, he remained true his principles. 6. The book is full ... witty sayings and brilliant dialogues. 7. I highly appreciate and admire him ... his powerful writings. 8. He has vivid memories ... his visit ... the Soviet Union. 9. Shaw's plays are always a success ... the Soviet stage. 10. Visitors ... Lenin's Flat and Study ... the Kremlin are always interested ... Lenin's Library.

10. Topics for Conversation. Тема для беседы. Мавзӯӣ барои мусоҳиба.

1. Have you seen any plays by Bernard Shaw?
2. Have you seen any films made after Shaw's plays?
3. What kind of plays do you most enjoy seeing at the theatre?
4. Are pupils of your school interested in taking part in amateur plays and concerts?
5. How often do you go to the cinema (theatre)?
6. What's on this week at the nearest cinema?
7. Name one feature film and one documentary film made in the Soviet Union.
8. Say something about a) a newsreel you have seen, b) an interesting feature film you have seen at the cinema.
9. Speak about the most memorable film you have ever seen, if a boy expected to pay for the ticket of his girl friend?
10. Is a boy expected to play for the ticket of his give friend?

11. More topics for conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳои зиёд барои мусоҳиба.

a) Imagine that you are a six-year-old going to the theatre for the first time in your life. You ask a lot of questions, even during the performance. Think of as many questions as you can.

b) Imagine that you are taking your little sister to the theatre for the first time. What explanations will you give her there?

Jokes

Bernard Shaw got an invitation to see a new play. After the performance, the producer asked the writer, “What is the difference between comedy, drama and tragedy?”

“Young man” answered Bernard Shaw, “the fact that you do not know the difference between comedy, drama and tragedy is for me personally, comedy, for the theatre-goers – drama, and for you – tragedy.”

Bernard Shaw missed the beginning of a performance. The attendant opening the door of the box asked him to sit down without making any noise.

“What? Has the audience gone to sleep?” asked Shaw in surprise.

- Did that play have a happy ending?
- Sure, everybody was glad it was over.

The Rich and the Learned

A rich man once asked a learned man why it was that men of science were so often to be seen at the doors of the rich, though rich men were seldom seen at the door of the learned.

“It is,” replied the learned man, “because the men of science know the value of riches, and the rich men do not always know the value of science.”

producer [prəˈdju:sə] – коргардон; продюсер

audience [ˈɔ:diənt(s)] – тамошобин; зритель

tragedy [ˈtrædzədɪ] – фочеа, мудҳиш; трагедия

comedy [ˈkɒmədi] – мазҳака; комедия

learned [ˈlɜ:nɪd] – омӯхташуда; учёный

attendant [əˈtendənt] – ҳамроҳкунанда, вобастакунанда; частник

value [ˈvælju:] – арзиш, қимат; ценность

box [bɒks] – қуттӣ, қоробка; ящик

riches [ˈrɪʃɪz] – бойигарй; богатство
sincere [sɪnˈsiə] – содикона, самимона; искренний, чистосер-
дечный

Sayings by Bernard Shaw

1. When there is no will, there is no way.
2. There is no love sincerer than the love of food.
3. A pessimist? A man who thinks everybody is as nasty as himself, and hates them for it.
4. The test of a man's breeding is how he behaves in a quarrel.
5. When a thing is funny, search it for a hidden truth.
6. There are two tragedies in life. One is not to get your heart's desire; the other is to get it.
7. We must make the world honest before we can honestly say to our children that honesty is the best policy.
8. Activity is the only road to knowledge.
9. The reasonable man adapts himself to the world; the unreasonable man persists in trying to adapt the world to himself. Therefore all progress depends on the unreasonable man.

Easy Reading

Well Turned

Bernard Shaw, the famous Irish playwright had many enemies. At a party a man said to him, "Wasn't your father a little tailor?"

"Of course, he was," answered the writer calmly.

"And why," asked the other, "did he not make a tailor of you?"

Bernard Shaw smiled. "And what was your father?" he asked in his turn.

"My father? My father, sir," said the man proudly, "my father was a gentleman."

"Then let me ask you," said the dramatist, "why didn't he make a gentleman of you?"

11. True/False. Правильно Неправильно. Дуруст/ Нодуруст.

1. George Bernard Shaw was a famous English playwright.
2. At a party a man talked to Shaw.
3. Shaw's father was a tailor.
4. The man's father was an officer.
5. The man who talked to Shaw was a real gentleman.
6. Shaw's answer was very clever.

Easy Reading

A Difficult Customer

Kate works in a shop, she sells gramophone records. One afternoon a middle-aged woman came in, sat down on a chair in front of the counter and smiled at her brightly.

“I want a record, dear,” she began. “One I heard on the radio this morning.”

“What was the record called?” Kate asked, without much hop. The woman shook her head.

“I don’t remember but I should know it if I heard it. Perhaps if you play me a few records, I shall be able to pick it out.”

She made herself more comfortable on her chair.

“We have hundreds of records in our shop,” Kate said, it would take a very long time to play you even a little of each, Could you sing it to me?”

The woman shook her head again. “No, I can’t sing at all”. She looked quite unhappy. Then suddenly her face brightened.

“I’ve just remembered something,” she said. “It comes from play. There’s a girl who speaks very badly, if you see what mean. But after a time she learns to talk well. Something about what do you call it? Phonetics?”

This was enough for Kate. Oh, I see. It’s from “My Fair Lady”, she said.

“That’s it, dear. If you’d thought of it sooner, we wouldn’t have wasted so much time. I suppose you are new to the job.”

13. Complete the sentences. Дополните следующие предложение. Чумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. Kate works in a shop selling ... 2. The middle-aged woman wanted to buy ... but ... 3. Kate told her that there were ... in the shop. 4. Suddenly the woman remembered that ... 5. That was enough for Kate; she said that ... 6. Instead of thanking Kate, woman said that ...

gramophone [ˈgræməfəʊn] – граммофон

record [ˈrekə:d] – сабт; запись

middle-aged [mɪdl ˈeɪdʒɪd] – миёнасол; средних лет

counter [ˈkaʊntə] – ҳисобкунак; счётчик

comfortable [ˈkʌmf(ə)təbl] – мусоид; уютный

phonetics [fəʊˈnetɪks] – фонетика

brighten [ˈbraɪtn] – дурахшидан, ҷило додан; придавать блеск

fair [fɛə] – ҳақиқӣ; справедливый
lady [ˈleɪdi] – бону; леди, дама
waste [weɪst] – харҷ кардан; тратить

Read with a dictionary **First-Footing**

In parts of Northern England and in Scotland the old custom First-Footing is still observed. Tradition says that the first person to enter a house on New Year's Day should be a dark-haired one, otherwise ill-luck will follow. It is also advisable that the person should bring with him a present – a piece of coal, a fish, a bottle of whisky or a piece of bread are traditional gifts. Curiously enough, in a few other parts of the country, the First- Footer is required to be a fair-haired man! In the past, young men of the right colouring and with an eye to business would offer their service as First-Footer to households in the district – for a small fee.

14. Correct the following sentences. Исправьте следующие предложения. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро дуруст кунед.

1. In most parts of England and Scotland the custom of First-Footing has long been forgotten.
2. Tradition says that on the first of January a fair-haired woman brings luck to every house.
3. It is advisable that the first visitor on New Year's Day should be given a present.
4. A piece of cake, or a box of sweets is the traditional present a person can get on New Year's Day.
5. In the past young men who served as First-Footers earned a lot of money.

The Grand New Year **(By H. E. Holdsworth)**

It's coming, boys,
It's almost here.
It's coming, girls,
The grand New Year.
A year to be glad in,
Not to be sad in
A year to live in,
To gain, to give in.

A year for trying,
And not for sighing.
A year for striving
And hearty thriving
It's coming, boys,
It's almost here.
It's coming, girls
The grand New Year.

Revision II

Nouns	Verb	Adjective	Adverb	Preposition
lesson 4. admiration artist choice defence expression freedom point power spirit struggle truth lesson 5 chance dream handkerchief hell joy moment storm lesson 6 Representative literature author journalist	lesson 4 admire determine express include separate (struggle) lesson 5 (dream) fix gain guess howl rub suggest lesson 6 accept give up appreciate correspond 11 (17)	lesson 4 calm fond gifted honest lesson 5 awful complete doubtful enthusiastic foolish low suspicious wild lesson 6 witty brilliant lively powerful 12 (17) Summing	lesson 4 Extremely lesson 5 Anyway Meanwhile 3	lesson 4 (including within) lesson 6 (in spite of) 1 (3)
fine arts exhibition magazine title triumph 18 (27)		Nouns Verbs Adjective Adverb Preposition 45 (64)		up 18 (27) 11 (17) 12 (17) 3 - 1 (3)

1. Give synonyms of the following words. Приведите синонимы следующих слов. Синонимҳои калимаҳои зеринро диҳед.

1. anxious
2. awful
3. fix
4. fix
5. fix
6. excellent
7. drop
8. suppose

4. guess
5. calm

9. be fond of
10. gifted

2. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский и таджикский язык. Ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. He is extremely fond of his gifted daughter. 2. Bob was anxious to fasten his seat belt before the take-off. 3. It was awfully foolish of you to make remarks about other people's appearances. 4. I was extremely glad to go on a business trip by plane 5. Several times a day the enemy dropped bombs on the city. 6. All brave and honest people took part in the defence of their home town. 7. I immediately noticed the man but couldn't remember his name. 8. As the weather was calm we started repairing the roof. 9. Within the next half an hour we received several urgent messages for help. 10. You are quite wrong if you think there's something suspicious about this plan.

3. Put in the correct prepositions. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Пешояндҳои дурустро гузоред.

The boys guided people ... the city, showing them places ... interest. 2. I bought a basket ... strawberries ... the public square. 3. As he lived not far ... Verona, he went ... work ... bus. 4. The boys were worried ... their sister, who was ill ... tuberculosis ... The man spoke ... us and asked what he could do ... us. 6. ... the early years ... the war Tom made friends ... Peter. 7. ... a radio broadcast Paul Robeson spoke ... defence... Spain and said that every artist should choose to fight ... freedom or ... slavery. 8. The mother's heart was filled ... admiration and love ... her son. 9. We wanted to have a drink ... tea and sat down ... a table covered ... white and red plastic squares. 10. The girl left ... work ... a hurry not thinking ..., what would happen ... her hair ... this wind. 11. The man noticed ... surprise that his coat was ... fire. 12. We agreed ... him that it was cold ... the stadium. 13. This sort ... girl won't sit quiet ... a long time. 14. Changes ... our life depend ... the development ... science.

4. Group the following words. Сгруппируйте следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро ғурӯҳбандӣ кунед:

- a) showing people who make things
b) showing people who do services

dressmaker, hairdresser, typist, busdriver, teacher, baker, cook, collective farmer, doctor, builder, gardener, sailor, designer, pilot, artist, singer, writer, postman, shoemaker, engineer

5. Analogy

1. True is to truth as ... is to youth,
2. ... is to honest as middle is to centre.
3. Bad is to good as nervous is to ...
4. Point it to ... as fight is to fight.
5. Some is to somewhere as no is to ...
6. East is to ... as ... is to westward.

6. Make adverbs from the adjectives in brackets and use them correctly in the following sentences. Образуйте прилагательных из скобках и правильно используйте их в следующих предложениях. Аз сифатҳои дар қавс додашуда зарфҳо созад ва онҳоро дар ҷумлаҳои зерин дуруст истифода баред.

1. The passengers arriving from abroad were singing (ready merry, safe) on deck. 2. He said that he needed my help (bad, angry, honest), but I (easy, sad, merry) told him that I was busy myself and could do nothing to help him. 3. (happy, honest, merry) speaking these urgent questions must be discussed separately. 4. You can (sure, easy, heavy) lose your way in this thick fog. 5. Outside it was raining (hearty, light, heavy), but we were sitting (sad, favourable, comfortable) in the pleasantly heated room. 6. Our new typist knows several foreign languages and does her work very (efficient, lovely, hearty). 7. No matter where he sang the common people always greeted him (happy, hearty sad). 8. The plane landed (easy, safe, hard) in Switzerland. 9. He is very honest and treats everybody (kind, angry, merry).

LESSON 7: DUSHANBE

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салохият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда таъвонад.

affair [ə'feə]
 musician [mju:'ziʃ(ə)n]
 magnificent [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt]
 price [praɪs]
 according to [ə'kɔ:dɪŋ]
 example [ɪg'zɑ:mpəl]
 space [speɪs]
 occasion [ə'keɪʒ(ə)n]
 distant ['dɪst(ə)nt]

audience ['ɔ:dɪənt(s)]
 enthusiasm [ɪn'thju:zɪæz(ə)m]
 arrange [ə'reɪndʒ]
 devote [dɪ'vəʊt]
 display [dɪs'pleɪ]
 deal with [di:l]
 exhibition [ˌeksɪ'bɪʃ(ə)n]
 construction [kən'strʌkʃ(ə)n]
 comfortable ['kʌmf(ə)təbl]

THE STORY OF A LUCKY HOUSE

Near Moscow's Zoo there is a house which cannot be even seen from Bolshaya Gruzinskaya Street which runs along side. Earlier it used to stand over the whole district. With lines of large trees running down towards the Presnya, it can be seen for miles.

Moscow grows faster every year, and architects have taken especially careful not to touch buildings of historical into while pulling down old houses. The house on Bolshaya Gruzinskaya has escaped destruction already for the fourth time.

It was built at the end of the 18th century for Shcherb the Russian historian. In 1812, when Napoleon marched into Moscow, the house caught fire but was saved. A half of wall was repaired and the house was as good as new.

For almost a century after that the house changed hands times but otherwise nothing happened to it. In 1905, during uprising of workers in Krasnaya Presnya it was fired on guns but still remained whole.

In the early days of the Great Patriotic War, some more buildings suffered heavily through nazi bombs. One of them fell into the yard of the 'lucky house', but it did not exploded out that the bomb contained only sand and a Czech dictionary, a message of solidarity from the nazi-occ territory. What is so unusual is that the bomb with the dictionary inside had saved the house which used to belong to Vladimir, the famous writer and author of the Dictionary of the Russian Language.

Vladimir Dal came to Moscow and moved into the house. He was one of the most popular men of his time. Dal, a doctor by profession, was a personal friend of Pushkin's, and visited the great poet when he was lying on his deathbed. Before he died Pushkin gave Dal a ring.

Dal seems to have been a walking encyclopedia. He worked in many fields, but his greatest achievement was the four volumed dictionary of the Spoken Russian Language.

In his dictionary Dal gives the meaning of the word “legend” as the memory of an event handed down by word of mouth from fathers to their sons. This house guards the memories of many events and people in Russian history, and the Vladimir Dal Museum is housed there.

1. Read and translate the following words. Прочитайте и переведите следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва тарҷума кунед.

trade union [ˈtreɪdˈjuːnjən]	special [ˈspeʃ(ə)l]
critical [ˈkɪtɪkl]	model [ˈ mɒd(ə)l]
expert [ˈeks pə:t]	reconstruction [ˌri:k(ə)nˈstrʌkʃ(ə)n]
gallery [ˈgæl(ə)rɪ]	note [nəʊt]
Manuscript [ˈ mænjəskɪpt] =	store = [stɔ:] shop
(a handwritten article, book)	subway [ˈsʌbweɪ], = Metro
moving pictures = cinema	shopper [ˈʃɒpə]
cathedral [kəˈθi:dr(ə)l]	performer [pəˈfɔ:mə]

2. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

Be, see, have, think, make, give, get, drive, write, eat, lie, grow, understand, come, hear, hold, let, put, speak, lay.

3. Translate into Tajik or Russian the words in bold type. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык выделенные слова. Калимаҳои ғайриодинамӣ ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. Our people take a great interest in **world affairs**. They are interested in events that happen in the world. That’s not **your affair**. That’s not your business.

2. A **musician** is a person who plays some musical instrument well. Several well-known **musicians** gave concerts in our town last spring.

3. There are lots of **magnificent** buildings in the capital. There are lots of beautiful and important-looking buildings in the capital. The acting of the play was **magnificent**. The acting was excellent.

4. What is the **price** of this coat? How much does this coat cost?

5. **According** to our Constitution people have the right to education. Our Constitution gives everybody the right to education.

Dushanbe is being reconstructed according to a carefully drawn-up plan. Dushanbe is being reconstructed after carefully drawn-up plan.

6. An **example** is a fact or thing which helps to make clear the meaning of something. The dictionary gives us severe **examples** of how this word is used.

7. There are lots of parks and **open spaces** in Dushanbe. An open space is a place without buildings in a town. On the 12th of April, 1961, Yuri Gagarin made the first **space flight** in the history of mankind. Soon it was possible to fly through **space** to the Moon.

8. An **occasion** means the time at which an event takes place. The song festival was **a great occasion**. It was a great event I have met this research worker on several **occasions**. I have met him several times. This is not a suitable **occasion** for laughing. This is not the right time for laughing.

9. **Distant** means far away in space or time. Visitors come to Dushanbe from **distant** parts of Tajikistan. Visitors come from places that are far from Dushanbe. That event happened in the **distant** past. It happened long ago.

10. The listeners at a theatre or in a concert hall are called the **audience**. The audience in Dushanbe theatres is critical.

11. **Enthusiasm** means a strong feeling of interest or admiration. The audience shouted with **enthusiasm** when our team won the game. The audience shouted enthusiastically when our team won the game.

12. **Arrange** means to organize or to put in certain order. The YCL members of our class **arranged** an interesting meeting with an outstanding scientist last week. She **had arranged** the books on the shelves.

13. **Devote** means to give up one's time or energy to some purpose. He devoted all his free time to sport. The famous doctor **devoted** his whole life to scientific research. **A devoted friend** is a great help when one is in trouble.

14. People who are interested in art often go to art **exhibition**. They go to art shows. Which pictures did you like best at the **exhibition**?

15. Great artists often **display** their pictures at exhibitions. They often show their pictures at exhibitions.

16. This book **deals with** English history. This book tells about English history. This man is not honest; don't have any dealings with him. Don't **have anything** to do with him.

17. **Construction** is the act of building. Lot's of houses are **under construction** in our town. Lot's of houses are being built in our town.

18. A soft arm-chair is much more **comfortable** than hard chat. Old shoes are usually more **comfortable** than new ones.

4. Read and learn by heart. Прочитайте и выучите наизусть Хонед ва азёд кунед.

Asking the Way

- Excuse me. Could you tell me how to find the Concert Hall? - Which concert hall do you mean?

- I mean the Borbad's Concert Hall.

- Oh, the Borbad Concert Hall. Go straight along the street up to the corner and then turn right.

- I see. Is it far?

- Yes, quite a long way. About a kilometer and a half.

- Turn right at the corner?

- Yes, that's right. As soon as you turn right, you'll see the concert hall in the distance.

- Thanks.

- Not at all. I'm always glad to help a stranger.

5. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или на русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. Our friends wanted us to see as much of their city as possible. 2. But it did not give us a chance to visit factories. 3. We got off at each stop to admire the fine stations. 4. In a word, we did everything people do in a strange city. 5. Moscow's theatres were crowded on all the occasions when we were there. 6. Plays of special interest to young people. 7. Manuscripts of all kinds are displayed there.

Proverbs

1. Rome was not built in a day.

2. To fiddle while Rome is burning.

3. My home is my castle.

4. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones.

Quotations

1. The best way out is through. (Robert Frost)

2. The old believe everything; the middle-aged suspect everything; the young know everything. (O. Wilde)

Witty Sayings

1. This fellow is so dishonest that if you shake hands with him, you must count your fingers afterwards.

2. It was Mark Twain who wrote that while everyone talks about the weather, no one ever does anything about it.

Jokes

Columbus's Radio

A New York newspaper published as a joke an advertisement offering a valuable antique – Christopher Columbus's radio. Twenty-eight persons called the next day to say they would like to buy it.

A Man is Not Like A Camel

What's the difference between a camel and a man?

Er ... «well, a camel can go on working for a week without finking, whereas in the case of a man it is the other way round. A man can go on drinking for a week without working.

Easy Reading

6. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или на русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

architect [ˈɑ:kitekt]	Czech [tʃek]
historian [hɪs'tɔ:rɪən]	solidarity [,sɒlɪ'dærəti]
uprising [ˈʌp,raɪzɪŋ]	territory ['terɪt(ə)rɪ]
nazi ['nɑ:tsɪ]	encyclopedia [en,saiklə'pi:diə]
bomb [bɒm]	legend ['ledʒənd]

7. Rearrange the sentences in the correct order. Переставьте предложения в правильном порядке. Калимаҳоро бо тартиб гузошта, ҷумлаҳоро дуруст кунед.

1. Then for almost a century nothing happened to the house.
2. At the beginning of the Great Patriotic War one of the nazi bombs fell into the yard of the 'lucky house'.
3. But during the uprising in Krasnaya Presnya it was fired on by guns.
4. The history of the 'lucky house' begins with its building at the end of the 18th century.
5. The last owner of the house was Vladimir Dal, a famous writer and author of a dictionary.

6. It first escaped destruction in 1812 when Napoleon marched burning Moscow.

7. In memory of Vladimir Dal, a museum is housed in the 'lucky house'.

8. As the bomb contained only sand and a dictionary, it did not explode.

8. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или на русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

uprising [ˈʌp,raɪzɪŋ]	tsar [zɑː]
ornament [ˈɔːnəmənt]	ton [tʌn]
dimension [daɪˈmen(t)ʃ(ə)n]	diameter [daɪˈæmɪtə]

Read with a dictionary.

Kremlin Bells

The ringing of bells played an important part in the whole life at Moscow in ancient days. Bells rang for invasions and during frequent fires, in cases of popular uprisings, and announced victories or holiday celebrations.

Even today bells ring from the Kremlin's Spassky Tower, every morning and midnight the radio broadcasts chime.

At present there are 29 ancient bells in the Moscow Kremlin. Some of them hang in the Tower of 'Ivan the Terrible' and surrounding buildings.

The biggest bell weighing 65 tons 320 kilograms is called the Assumption Day Bell. It was cast by Yakov Zavyalov with metal taken from an even older bell.

The most famous of all bells, the Tsar Bell, stands on ground at the foot of the Tower of 'Ivan the Terrible', and is rounded by people from morning till night. Its history is as follows. In 1730 Empress Anna Ivanovna ordered that weighing 9,000 poods (126 tons) should be cast. Germain casting master of the French king thought it was a joke. Motorin, the most famous casting master in Moscow in days, declared that it was possible.

Ivan Motorin failed to finish the casting, and it was completed by his son Mikhail. Besides all kinds of ornaments found a bell there is the following inscription: "This bell was cast by sian craftsman Ivan Motorin, the son of Fyodor Motorin, an son Mikhail Motorin."

Here are a few figures about the dimensions and weight the giant. It is 6 metres 14 centimetres tall, it has a diameter metres 65 centimetres, and it weighs 202 tons 924 kilograms that is why it is called the Tsar Bell.

9. Complete the following sentences. Дополните следующие предложения словами, приведенными в скобках. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. In ancient days bells were rung in Moscow during (the festivals, frequent fires, cinema performances).
2. At present there are 29 (towers, bells, chimneys) in Kremlin.
3. The most famous of all bells is the (Assumption Day Spassky) Bell.
4. Germain was a (German, French, Russian) casting master.
5. The (father, son, grandson) of Ivan Motorin finished с the famous bell.

LESSON 8: NATURE AND ANIMALS

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда таваонад.

attentively [ə'tentɪvli]

arrest [ə'rest]

birth [bɜ:θ]

barn [bɑ:n]

cruel ['kru:əl]

count [kaunt]

capable ['keɪpəbl]

effect [ɪ'fekt]

face [feɪs]

firm [fɜ:m]

intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt]

impress ['ɪmpres]

probably ['prɒbəbli]

recognize ['rekəɡnaɪz]

sunflower ['sʌnflaʊə]

straight [streɪt]

truck [trʌk]

PRISONER' S DOG

(After A. Maltz)

Last year, in London, I was asked to have tea with some friends. It was there that I met a man named Edmund Donat.

Polish by **birth**. He seemed to be about 55, and I was surprised to learn later that he was ten years younger. My friend's wife Libby told us that he had been a prisoner in a concentration camp.

Libby was fond of dogs and thought very highly of them, while her husband did not.

"Dogs can be taught certain things, my dear," her husband said, "but they don't reason, and so cannot **be intelligent**."

"I believe," said Donat, "that there is a great difference in the intelligence of dogs, just as there is in men. There surely are some dogs that are **capable** of intelligent reasoning. I once saw a dog that reasoned about what was best to do." Donat stopped, but when Libby asked him to tell us all about it, he continued.

"There was a house **on the farm** where we used to spend our holidays. I was a good friend of the sons of the farmer. One of them, Antek, was a year older than I, almost 18. They had a dog, whose name was Pani. Pani loved everyone in the family, but above all she was Antek's dog. Between Pani and Antek there was real understanding.

"In December, 1939, when the Germans had Poland under their control, they ordered that every thoroughbred dog was to be turned over to them. All other dogs were to be killed".

"Why killed?" asked Libby.

"Why not?" Donat answered with a smile. "They needed certain dogs for guard duty; all others were useless to them. In fact, they looked upon people more or less the same way. When Antek heard of it, he hid Pani in the barn.

"About a week later, an army **truck** with SS men came to the farm. They asked for dogs, but were told that there were none.

Then the corporal walked **straight** up to Antek and Pani a pistol to his face. 'Till count ten. If you don't say where your dog is in that time, I'll kill you, and don't think that I shall not before he even began **to count**, the mother shouted, "The dog is in the barn!" So the father was sent to bring Pani.



Soon Pani came. She was a beautiful dog, though not thoroughbred. There was so much intelligence in her brown eyes that the Germans were **impressed** with her. Antek, of course, never stopped asking the corporal to show Pani to his officer. He said that she would learn whatever they wanted quicker than aother dog. At last, that was how the corporal decided it, Pani was taken away.

“Eight months later we met Pani again. Antek and I joined the partisans, and one night we were **arrested**. For a month were kept in Warsaw, and then we were sent to the concentration camp of Auschwitz. The work we had was to build a road from a new airfield. The work was killing – from sunrise to sunsets seven days a week, and the food was very bad.

“One morning, in August, Antek suddenly saw Pani with another group of workers. Late that evening he told me, ‘Pani is here, and she doesn’t remember me.’

“But first you must understand something about the way, worked there – every group had about 40 men and was guard by two cruel SS men and three dogs. If a man came nearer the three or four metres of the line, the dog on that side would be its feet and face him with a snarl that would make even the bravest afraid. At two metres the dog would jump at the man.

“That morning Antek saw Pani not far from him. He was raid to call to her. What surprised him then was to see Pani suddenly turn her head and look at him. He said she looked him attentively for about thirty seconds without showing in any way that she had **recognized** him. Then her guard moved away with her. Yet, as Antek said, Pani was a dog, not a man, and if he had not forgotten him, it was impossible that she should not react to him.

“About a week later, our group had a change of guards. With one of the new guards came Pani. By the second day I saw that there was something strange in her: each time Antek’s work brought him anywhere near her, I had the feeling that she was **attentively** watching him.”

Libby’s husband said, “Are you telling us that she knew Antek, but was not showing it? That’s hard to believe.”

“Antek noticed the same thing, and neither of us knew what believe. Well, after a week of this, Antek said to me one morning. “I’m sure Pani does know me. I’m going to find out.” That day, as Antek did his work, he moved nearer to her and kept saying her name in a low voice. When he reached the line, Pani jumped up. And then something

strange happened: she did not snarl at him or get ready to jump, but looked over at the guard who was her guard – and then she turned back to Antek and hatched him. When Antek moved away, she lay down again.”

“So you are telling us she had recognized him, but was hiding it”. Libby’s husband said, but Donat continued.

“That night Antek told us that not only was he sure that Pani knew him, but he was sure that Pani knew he was a prisoner of the Germans, just like her. Then he added **firmly**, ‘Pani and I are going to run away.’

“One day a man in our group fell ill. He was carried to the duck. When the guard’s eyes were on the truck, Antek suddenly ran to the field of **sunflowers** by the side of the road. When he was about two metres from Pani, I heard him shout, ‘Pani, come!’ Pani jumped up with a terrible snarl. For a second I thought she could jump at Antek. And then as if something had suddenly pulled her back, she stopped where she was.

“Antek disappeared in the thick forest of sunflowers. The guard behind started shooting. Two large dogs ran **into the field** and then one of the two guards also ran into the field carrying a gun.”

“For a few seconds Pani stood where she was without moving. The next moment Pani let out a howl that made me think she had been wounded. And in the very next second she disappeared the sunflowers. Was she running away with Antek, or was she running to tear him to pieces? I did not know.

“The field of sunflowers was **probably** 600 metres deep. On the **other side** I could see some farm buildings. Behind there was a mountain. Antek surely would try to get there, I thought. Then, suddenly, from the field, there came the most terrible howling of dogs. They’ve caught him, I thought. The howling went on, then there were shots. Suddenly, there was quiet, like the quiet of death. And then I saw Antek running near the farm buildings. Everyone saw him, but the SS man could not do anything because his gun had no effect at that distance. Antek ran behind a bar and when we next saw him, he was moving up the mountain to the trees.”

After a moment’s silence, Libby’s husband asked, “And Pani? Was she with Antek?”

“No. Just then, **out of the field** came the SS man. His left arm was wounded and his clothes torn. By his side came one of the dogs, also

wounded. I did not know German, but there were others who did. They said that Pani had gone mad, had killed one of the dogs, wounded another and then, when the SS man had come, she had attacked him, too. He had shot her.”

There was silence in the room. Then Libby’s husband said quietly, “Do you know **what happened to Antek**”

1. Read and translate the following words. Прочитайте и переведите следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва тарҷума кунед:

concentration camp [ˌkən(t)s(ə)nˈtreɪʃ(ə)n kæmp]	pistol [ˈpɪst(ə)l]
control [kənˈtrəʊl]	intelligence [ɪnˈtelɪdʒ(ə)n(t)s]
though [ðəʊ]= although	Polish [ˈpəʊlɪʃ]
partisan [ˌpɑːtɪˈzæn]	react [rɪˈækt]

2. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

meet, tell, be, think, say, hide, build, find, come, put, lie, begin, send, bring, show, keep, see, understand, have, know, let, fall, run, stand, tear, catch, shoot, lay, lead, shine, go.

3. Translate into Tajik or Russian the words in bold type. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык слова с жирным шрифтом. Калимаҳои сиёҳкардашударо ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. He has lived here **since his birth**. He has lived here since he was born. Is he English or French **by birth**? Does he have English or French parents?

2. An **intelligent** person has the power of understanding, learning and knowing things. Horses and dogs are **intelligent** animals. Libby’s husband was sure that dogs could not be **intelligent**. An **intelligent** child learns things easily.

3. A person who is able to do things quickly and successfully is said to be a **capable** person. Mr Rahimov is a very **capable** doctor. Mr Rahimov is a very gifted doctor.

4. A **barn** is a building in which hay or grain is kept. This collective farm has a new **barn** for hay. They hid the dog in **the barn**.

5. Cars and buses carry people. A **truck** carries goods, animals, and so on. ‘**Truck**’ is an American word, the English word is ‘lorry’.

6. A **straight line** is a line without any turn in it. Coleman had a **straight nose**. This road leads **straight** to the village, straight on, don't turn away from the road.

7. To **count** means to say numbers in order. When angry count a hundred. Before the soldiers even began to **count** ten, the mother told them that the dog was in the barn.

8. Something **impresses** us if it has a strong influence on us. The tourists were **impressed** by the high mountains. The Germans were **impressed** with the dog. They found the dog was admirable.

9. To **arrest** means to take somebody prisoner. Before the man could escape, he was caught and arrested. Salim and Komil were arrested soon after they had joined the partisans.

10. A **cruel** person likes to give pain to others. Don't be cruel to animals. Don't make them suffer.

11. To **face** an enemy means to meet him bravely. The guard dog **faced** the prisoner, showing his teeth threateningly.

12. Although we hadn't seen each other for years, he **recognized** me immediately. You will **recognize** Mary by her red hat. You will know by the red hat which of the girls is Mary.

13. She listened to us **attentively**. She listened to us careful He read the letter **attentively**. He read it carefully.

14. A **firm** person is not easily moved or influenced. She **firmly** decided to achieve her aim. He was firm in his vie we could not make him change his opinion.

15. In the Ukraine they grow sunflowers from which they make food for farm animals.

16. They will **probably** come later. Perhaps they will come late. Tom probably knows that man. Tom seems to know that man.

17. They heard **shots** in the distance. They heard **shooting** in distance.

18. The man's shouts had no effect on the dog. The man's shouts had no influence on the dog. He did not shoot because gun had no effect at that distance. He did not shoot beek there would be no result.

4. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или на русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. It was there that I met a man named Edmund Do 2. The Germans had Poland under their control. 3. All other were to be killed. 4. That was how the corporal decided it. 5. You must understand something

about the way we worked. 6. What surprised him then was to see Pani look at him. 7. It was impossible that she should not react to him. 8. I'm sure Pani does know me. 9. She looked over at the guard. 10. Not only we were sure that Pani knew him. 11. I thought she would jump.

5. Find opposites for the following words. Найдите противоположностии значения следующих слов. Зидмаънои калимаҳои зеринро ёбед.

useful, different, cruel, sunrise, far from, believe, worse, succe-ed, low, cool, arrest, clean, first, appear, finish, life, displeased.

6. Find words in List B that mean nearly the same as the words in List A. Найдите в списке слова, близкие по значению со словами списка А. Дар рӯйхати В калимаҳои ёбед, ки тақрибан ба калимаҳои рӯйхати А ҳаммаъно мебошанд.

A – unhappy, not any, another person, organize, nowhere, rush, a great deal, street, like better, completely.

B – a lot of, go quickly, not in any place, prefer, none, road, entirely, sad, someone else, arrange.

7. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб гардонед.

1. Was Libby fond of dogs? 2. Did Libby's husband think highly of dogs? 3. Is there a great difference in the intelligence of dogs? 4. Can all dogs reason? 5. Are thoroughbred dogs more intelligent than ordinary dogs? 6. Did the author spend his school holidays in town? 7. Was Pani a thoroughbred or an ordinary dog? 8. Was she hidden in the hay? 9. Did the German SS men find Pani? 10. Did they shoot her in the end? Why?

8. Put in the missing question word and ask your classmates to answer the following questions. Вставьте пропущенное вопросительное слово и попросите одноклассников ответить на следующие вопросы. Калимаи саволи дурустро гузored ва ба ҳамсинфонатон гӯед, ки ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб гардонанд.

1. ... did the author meet Edmund Donat? 2. ... was the author surprised to learn that Donat was only forty-five? 3. ... concentration camp had Donat been in? 4. ... was fond of dogs 5. ... would the author spend his school holidays? 6. ... was the name of the farmer's dog? 7.

... did Pani love above all? 8. ... did the German soldiers take Poland under their control? 9. did the Germans collect only thoroughbred dogs? 10. ... did Antek hide Pani?

9. Use prepositions where necessary. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Дар чоң зарури пешояндро гузоред.

1. Antek joined ... the partisans and ... some time he was arrested.
2. ... a month ... Warsaw, the men were sent ... the concentration camp ... Auschwitz. 3. ... sunrise ... sunset the men had to work hard, building a road ... a new airfield. 4. One day... Antek's surprise, he saw his dog Pani ... another group workers. 5. Although he was not far ... the dog, he was afraid to call . . . her. 6. But the dog looked. .. him attentively . . . about half a minute. ... showing ... any way that she had recognized him. 7. ... a change.. . guards Pani came ... one the new SS men. 8. Every group ... prisoners was guarded two SS men and three dogs. 9. Whenever a man reached the line, the dog ... that side was ... its feet and jumped ... the man.

10. Who said it? When? Why? Кто сказал это? Когда? Зачем? Инро кӣ гуфт? Кай? Дар кучо?

1. The dog is in the barn 2. I'm sure Pani does know me. I'm going to find out. 3. They looked upon people more or less the same way. 4. Dogs can be taught certain things but they don't reason. 5. If you don't say where the dog is. I'll kill you. 6. Pani, come. 7. Pani had gone mad. 8. There surely are some dogs that are capable of intelligent reasoning.

11. Put the following sentences in the correct order. - Расположите следующие предложения в правильном порядке. – Ҷумлаҳои бо тартиби дуруст гузоред.

1. The howling went on; then there were shots.
2. The SS men saw Antek but they could not do anything because their guns had no effect at that distance.
3. Suddenly Antek called to Pani and ran to the field of sunflowers.
4. Antek ran up the mountain and soon disappeared in the forest.
5. The next moment Pani let out a howl and also disappeared in the forest of sunflowers.
6. Two large dogs and a guard followed Antek.
7. A few minutes later Antek was seen running near the farm building.

8. He soon disappeared in the thick forest of sunflowers.
9. Then, suddenly, a terrible howling of dogs was heard from the field.
10. Pani stood where she was without moving.

12. 1) Describe Tolib's dog Khaibar. Опишите собаку Толиба Хайбар. Саги Толибро бо номи Хайбар тасвир кунед.

2) Continue the story and say what happened to Antek after his escape. Продолжите рассказ и расскажите, что случилось с Антеком после его побега. Ҳикояро идома диҳед ва гӯед, к ибо Антек баъд аз фирор карданааш, чи шуд.

3) Speak about the prisoners' life in concentration camps. Расскажите о жизни заключенных в концлагерях. Дар бораи зиндагии маҳбасиён дар лагери концентратсионӣ гап занед

13. Make up a dialogue. Составить диалог. Муколама тартиб диҳед.

a) between Antek and his mother after the dog had been taken away; b) between the German soldiers after Antek's escape; c) between you and your neighbour: You think very highly of something or somebody, but your neighbour does not.

14. Topics for Conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба.

1. Are you interested in keeping pets?
2. Why do people keep pets?
3. What kind of animals are you fond of?
4. What animals are more or less intelligent?
5. What is your favourite season? Why?
6. What is the weather like in winter (spring, summer, autumn)?

Weather Report

15. Translate the following weather forecast. If necessary, consult your dictionary. Переведите следующий прогноз погоды. При необходимости обратитесь к словарю. Пешгӯии боду ҳавои зеринро тарҷума кунед. Дар ҳолати зарури луғатро истифода намоед.

A deep depression centered north of Finland is expected to move southwards.

The morning should be bright but in the afternoon occasional snow may spread from the north, heavy in places though with bright

intervals. It may reach the Baltic Republics late in the evening. More general snow is likely to follow. Temperatures should be slightly above average for the time of the year.

16 a) Try and give the weather forecast which should have been given twenty four hours ago. Попробуйте дать прогноз погоды, который должен был быть дан двадцать четыре часа назад. Кӯшиш карда боду хаворо барои бисту чор соат қаблан пешгӯи намоед.

b) Describe the weather on a fine autumn (spring) day and on a cold pleasant winter day. Опишите погоду в прекрасный осенний (весенний) день и в холодный приятный зимний день. Боду ҳаво рӯзи ғо-рами тирамох (баҳор) ва рӯзи хуноки замистонро тасвир кун.

Proverbs

1. The moon is a moon whether it shines or not.
2. Live donkeys are better than dead lions.
3. A bird is known by its song.
4. If wishes were horses, beggars would ride.
5. Hunger breaks stone walls.
6. Who has never tasted bitter, knows not what is sweet.

Quotations

1. Wash a dog, comb a dog, still a dog remains a dog. (Henderson)
2. The wolf sheds his coat once a year, his disposition never (B. Franklin).
3. The love of nature is the only love which does not deceive human hopes. (H. Balzac)

donkey [ˈdɒŋki] – хар; осёл	disposition [ˌdɪspəˈzɪʃ(ə)n] – мавкё, чобачокунӣ; диспози- ция
beggar [ˈbegə] – гадо; попро- шайка, нищий	Henderson [ˈhendərsən] – Ҳен- дерсон
comb [kəʊm] – шона; расчёска	Franklin – Франклин
shed [ʃed] – резондан; разли- вать	

Jokes

The crows were watching a jet plane rushing by and disappearing, its jet engine spurting flames from its exhausts.

«Look, how that bird is racing,” one crow said.

“No wonder. You would run like that, too, if your tail was on fire.”

A farmer was showing the tourists around, "That's some bunch of cows we got," said one of the tourists.

"Not bunch – herd."

«Heard of what?"

"Herd of cows."

"Sure, I've heard of cows."

"I mean a cow herd."

"So what if a cow herd? I didn't say anything wrong!"

Teacher: What's the difference between electricity and lightning?

Mary: We don't have to pay for lightning.

17. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикс-кий или русский язык. Ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

emigrant [ˈemigrənt]

territory [ˈterɪt(ə)rɪ]

Atlantic [ətˈlæntɪk]

cultivate [ˈkʌltɪveɪt]

capitalism [ˈkæpɪt(ə)lɪz(ə)m]

material [məˈtɪəriəl]

export [ɪkˈspɔ:t]

businessman [ˈbɪznɪsmæn]

dollar [ˈdɒlə]

Easy Reading

The Fate of American Forests

Three hundred years ago when the first emigrants from Europe landed on the territory of the present day United States they found thick forests which covered almost half of the land. In the east the forests were so thick that a squirrel could travel from the Atlantic as far as the Mississippi river, jumping from tree to tree.

Clearing an open ground, which the emigrants needed for cultivating crops and building houses, was very hard work.

In the nineteenth century capitalism began to develop in USA. At that time the country was in great need of all kinds of building materials.

Selling timber became a good business, exporting it to western Europe brought in a lot of money.

Hundreds of businessmen came to the forests and started cutting down the trees over thousands of square miles. Their only purpose was

getting dollars. The business took only good and strong timber for building material while old trees remained lying on the ground. These trees easily caught fire, causing still greater harm.

The land was turned into a desert. The cutting out of the forests resulted in the destruction of the once rich soil.

The forests hold the soil in place, not letting the rain wash it away. In places where there are no forests, rainwaters quickly find their way into the rivers, washing away the rich upper soil and filling the rivers with sand and mud.

In the days of the first emigrants, the waters of American rivers were clear. Now the Americans themselves call the Mississippi River “Big Muddy” because of its muddy water.

Complete the following sentences.

Дополните следующие предложения.

Їумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. ... covered almost half of the land on the territory of the present day of United States.

2. ... the forests were so thick that a squirrel, jumping from tree to tree, could travel from the Atlantic to the Mississippi River.

3. ... to the European countries brought the businessmen a lot of money.

4. ... was turned into a desert.

5. ..., rainwaters wash away the rich upper soil and fill all the rivers with sand and mud.

6. ... is called “Big Muddy” because of its muddy water.

18. Read with a dictionary. Читайте со словарем. Бо лугат хонед.

Buying a Dog

Bert and Ben have decided to buy a dog. They go to a petshop.

“We want to buy a dog,” Bert announces to the assistant.

“That’s right, we’ve come to buy a dog,” adds Ben.

«What sort of dog?» the assistant asks haughtily.

Bert shrugs his shoulders. “Oh, you know, the usual kind – four legs, two ears and a bark.”

«Well, sir, we have all kinds of dogs here.” He points to a bulldog who snarls ferociously at them.

Bert looks nervous and mutters. “No, I think we’d prefer something rather smaller.”

“What about this one,” pointing to a barking Pekinese. “This is really friendly animal.”

But Bert says, “No, I think we’d prefer something rather more intelligent.”

Suddenly Ben points at something behind Bert. “Look! Bert!” What?”

«Look at that lovely long-haired one over there!”

“Yes, that’s just what we want.”

«Not too ferocious-looking ... «And very intelligent.”

Together they ask the assistant, “How much?”

But the assistant has a strange expression on his face. “That one happens to be my daughter!”

19. Correct the following sentences. Исправьте следующие предложения. Цумлаҳои зеринро дуруст кунед.

1. Bert and Ben went to an exhibition to buy a cat.
2. The shop assistant was very kind and helpful.
3. The bulldog came and made friends with the boys at once.
4. Bert wanted to take the lovely Pekinese.
5. Ben liked another long-haired dog.
6. With great enthusiasm the shop assistant agreed to sell the long-haired dog.

LESSON 9. CHARACTER AND APPEARANCE

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать текст, переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда та-вонад.

duck [dʌk]

good-looking [ˈgʊd ˈluːkɪŋ]

handsome [ˈhæn(d)səm]

even [ˈiːvn]

lash [læʃ]

wheel [wi:l]

ugly [ˈʌgli]

fair [feə]

wonder [ˈwʌndə]

pleasure [ˈpleʒə]

pronounce [prəˈnaʊn(t)s]

bright [braɪt]

valley [ˈvæli]
bicycle [ˈbaɪsɪkl]
harm [hɑːm]
make up one's mind
ashamed [əˈʃeɪmd]

suit [sjuːt]
pair [peə]
quarrel [ˈkwɔrl]
sweep [swiːp]

BARNEY'S MAGGIE

Coleman was going duck shooting because he wanted to be alone.

The reason he wanted to be alone was that he was very po-pular. He was twenty-four. He was very **good-looking**. His hand-some face was strong; he had even white teeth, a straight nose long **lashes** and blue eyes. He was just six feet tall and **very well** built. Even the old clothes he wore **in the field** sat very well on his body.

He could sing well and he could play the accordion and he could dance. He was a good man in a boat or behind the **wheel** of a tractor.

He liked to shoot at the end of the **valley**. The place **was a long way from** the road where he left his **bicycle**, and he had go up the hill to Barney's house and then **cross several fields** one after another. As he walked along **with a gun under his arm** he suddenly heard a big noise behind him. He looked back and saw that Barney's bull was after him. Why it had suddenly come into the bull's head to run after a **harmless** man going across the field. Coleman did not know, and he did not have time to think. He was a very fast runner, but the bull seemed even faster. Then out of the corner of his eyes he saw a girl coming over the wall with a stick in her hand. It was a very light stick. She ran towards him. He shouted, "Go back! Go back!" But there was the girl facing the bull. The bull stopped, and that was his trouble, before he could **make up his mind** the girl struck him on the nose with her stick. The bull turned and went off.

Coleman was **ashamed** and angry. "You needn't have done that," he said.

"He was very near you," the girl said. "I was afraid he was going to hurt you."

Coleman looked at the girl. He recognized her at once. They had an expression in the place. They said, "Such and such a thing is **as ugly** as Barney's Maggie." She was a tall girl, as tall as himself, and the kindest thing to be said about her was that she had nice **fair** hair.

Suddenly Coleman laughed. "Ah, to hell with it," he said. "I was afraid for my life."

“That’s nonsense,” she said firmly.

“Well,” he said, “that’s that. Thanks. I must be going. I’ll see you again.”

“Goodbye, Coleman,” she said.

Several days after that Coleman kept thinking about Maggie. He thought, why they say “as ugly as Barney’s Maggie”. She’s well built. She has nice brown eyes and nice hair. They shouldn’t be allowed to talk about people like that. Then another thought came to this mind. “I suppose she’ll tell the whole place about me fed the bull and I’ll be a laughing-stock.”

But she didn’t.

The next time he saw her was at the monthly fair. He was buying cattle. He knew somebody was looking at him for a long time. He turned his head and saw her up the street, looking at him. She was tall enough to be seen over the heads of the people.

“Hello, Maggie,” he said and **wondered** that he got **pleasure** out of **pronouncing** her name. “Will you be going to the dance tonight?”

“Yes,” she said, “I always go.”

He looked forward to the dance. He saw her. She was well-messed and he liked the look of her and he danced with her and was light on her feet.

He wanted to be with her all the time.

He knew the way she cycled home and let her go to follow her later on his bicycle. They walked the four miles to her home. It was a bright night. They didn’t talk much, but before they reached the house. Coleman knew that he couldn’t do without her.

There on the road he didn’t even kiss her. He held her hand and then said, “Listen, Maggie, on Friday night I will come to the house and I will talk to your father.” That’s what he said.

Coleman expected to wake up in the morning feeling unhappy saying, “What have I done? Why did I say I would be up on Friday to ask for her?” But he didn’t feel that way.

On Friday, before going to her house, he went into his pub to get a pint. He was wearing his new suit and shone all over like a pair of new shoes.

He drank alone as he would sometimes do. Suddenly he hears a man saying ... As mad as Barney’s Joel!” Could that be the same Barney?

The barman laughed.

“Where have you been, Coleman?” he asked. “That’s the Barney that has the ugly daughter. You know. The one up the valley. His son, that is. His son Joe. He went mad.»

“I see,” said Coleman, and his blood ran cold.

He left the pint there and went out into the evening. That settled it. She should have said something about this. Had she had time to say anything? She hadn’t. How many times had he talked to her at all? Very few. What was he going to know what he would do? He would say to hell with them could imagine her father waiting for him. So what did he do? He went back into the pub and got drunk and started a with the barman. That’s what he did. And that night was to be remembered for a long time. They spoke of it as the night Coleman got drunk and beat up the barman.

But nobody ever knew how Coleman felt when he woke up the next morning. He woke up and said. “Oh, god! I have ruined my life!” And he hurriedly dressed and went up to her house. He went in through the open door. Only she was there in the kitchen **sweeping** the floor and she saw him, and as he looked into the eyes, he knew it was no good, no good at all. Just like before one look, and he knew that he loved her.

No talk at all. He just turned and came back to the valley. He is much older now and his hair is very grey and he is a very hard worker and people like him a lot, but many wonder Coleman has never married. Never at all. Now you know.

(After Walter Mac)

**1. Read and retell the text. Прочитайте и перескажите текст.
Матиро хон ва накл кун.**

Easy Reading **Humbug**

Charles Darwin, the great English naturalist (1809—1882) was friendly towards children. One day two boys decided to play trick on him. They caught a butterfly, a grasshopper, a beetle and a centipede, and out of them made a new insect. They took the head of the beetle, the body of the centipede, the wings of the butterfly, and the legs of the grasshopper and stuck them all together. Then they took the strange bug to the scientist and said “Can you tell us the name of this bug?”

Darwin looked at the insect and then at the boys.

“Where did you find it?” he asked with a smile.

"We caught it in the field."

"Did it hum when you caught it?" the naturalist wanted know.

"Yes, it did," was the answer.

"Well, then," said Darwin, "it's a humbug."

2. In each of these lines one word does not fit in suitably. Find the word. В каждой из этих строк одно слово лишнее. Найдите это слово. Дар хар як сатр як калима мутобик нест. Калимаро ёбед.

1. bug, grasshopper, beetle, centipede, humbug.

2. chair, bed, shelf, guest, table.

3. horse, puppy, donkey, cat, dog.

4. sing, whisper, dance, hum, shout.

5. butter, butterfly, meat, milk, bread.

6. hate, harm, hurt, quarrel, cheer.

7. wise, foolish, intelligent, clever, gifted.

8. leg, hand, eye, shoulder, body .

3. Read and translate the following words. Прочитайте и переведите следующие слова. Калимахои зеринро хонед ва тарчума кунед.

1. accordion [ə'kɔːdɪən]

2. bull [bul]

3. barman ['bɑːmən]

4. hurriedly ['hʌɪɹɪdlɪ]

4. Look at the pictures and tell the story. Посмотрите на картинки и составьте по ним рассказ. Ба расм нигаред ва хикояро накл кунед.



5. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

go, shoot, want, wear, sit, sing, play, try, cross, hear, see, run, know, wash, have, think, make, shout, strike, do, turn, hurt, build, buy, laugh, hold, tell, feel, kiss, drink, leave, say, get, speak, beat, wake up, sweep, sleep, lie, lay, put, send, cut, spread.

6. Form the opposites and translate the words into Tajik or Russian. Подберите к следующим словам антонимы и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Зидмаъноии калимаҳои созад ва онҳоро бо забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

**Model: even – uneven
able – unable, etc.**

fair, favourable, natural, popular, kind, happy, troubled, suitable, suspicious, comfortable, common, enthusiastic, impressed, usual, necessary, afraid, intelligent, known, important.

7. Form the opposites and translate the words into Tajik or Russian. Подберите к следующим словам антонимы значения и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Зидмаъноии калимаҳои созад ва онҳоро бо забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Model: dependent – independent

complete, capable, experienced, efficient, expensive, human valuable, correct, active, different, effective.

8. Translate the words in bold type into Tajik or Russian. Переведите выделенные слова на таджикский или русский язык. Калимаҳои сиёҳкардашударо ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. Ducks are water birds. People can **keep ducks** wherever they have a lake or a river near their houses. Hunters go to the lakes or the seashore **to shoot wild ducks**.

2. Jane is a **good-looking** girl. Jane is a pretty girl.

3. A good-looking girl is said to be beautiful, a good-looking man is said to be **handsome**. Coleman was a **handsome** young man.

4. **Even** means ‘regular’, ‘unchanging’. Coleman had beautiful even teeth. Coleman had beautiful, regular teeth.

5. People’s eyes are **bordered with lashes**. The girl looked at through her long black **lashes**.

6. A car moves **on wheels**. A car has four **wheels**. How many **wheels** has a railway carriage? I can't use my bike before I get a new **wheel** for it. A **wheel** is round.

7. A **valley** is a lower place between hills or mountains. Often there are streams in **valleys**. Coleman went to the end the valley to shoot ducks.

8. A **bicycle** is a bike. If you want to go cycling, you can take my **bicycle**.

9. To **harm** somebody means to hurt him. The boy was afraid that the bull might harm him. Don't be afraid of my dog he's quite **harmless**. He won't bite you.

10. Jenny **made up her mind** to take part in the competition, decided to take part in the competition.

11. Coleman felt **ashamed** of having run from the bull. Coleman thought that by running from the bull he had lost his honour because he had shown that he was afraid. You shouldn't feel **ashamed** to ask for help, it won't make people think badly of you.

12. **Ugly** means unpleasant to look at. It is the opposite of pretty and beautiful. The house looked old and **ugly**. The village people said that Maggie was a very **ugly** girl.

13. Maggie had fair **hair**. She had yellow hair.

14. To **wonder** means to ask oneself about something. I wonder what he wants. I don't know what he wants, but I should like to know it.

15. We **feel pleasure** when we are happy or pleased. It **gave me** a lot of pleasure to hear of your success. "Will you join us?" "**With pleasure.**"

16. It gave Coleman great pleasure to **pronounce** Maggie's name. It gave Coleman great pleasure to say her name. Beginners find some English words difficult **to pronounce**. Beginners find some English words difficult to say correctly.

17. It was a bright night. The moon was shining; the night was full of moonlight. The sun was shining brightly. The day was very sunny. Terry is a **bright** boy. He is a clever boy, he understands everything easily.

18. A **pair** means two things of the same kind that are used together. He bought a **pair of trousers**. She bought a **pair of shoes**.

19. Jack has a new **suit**. He has a new jacket and trousers.

20. These two men hate each other. Whenever they meet they **quarrel** and sometimes even fight. A person who gets angry easily often

quarrels with people. Coleman got drunk and started a **quarrel** with the barman.

21. **To sweep** means to push something away or clear away dust or dirt with a broom [brium] etc. Maggie was **sweeping** the floor when Coleman entered. In autumn we have **to sweep** the dead leaves from the streets. During the autumn rains the water rose in the river and swept a bridge away.

9. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. The reason he wanted to be alone was that he was very popular. 2. He was just six feet tall. 3. The kindest thing to be said about her was that she had nice hair. 4. I must be going. 5. She was tall enough to be seen over the heads of the people. 6. He got pleasure out of pronouncing her name. 7. He let her go to follow her later. 8. That's what he said. 9. He didn't feel that way. 10. He drank alone as he would sometimes do. 11. His blood ran cold. 12. He would say to hell with them. 13. That night was to be remembered for a long time. 14. He just turned and came back.

10. Retell the dialogue in indirect speech. Перескажите диалога в косвенной речи. Муколамаро дар нутки мазмунаннақшуда нақл кун.

A Dialogue

- Hello, Shodi! What's the matter with you? Why are you sad?

- You know, I have invited my sister and brother to the football match, they'll wait for me at the stadium at 6, and I have meeting and cannot hand them the tickets. I don't know what to do.

- Well, I'm free and can do it for you. But how shall I recognize them?

- That's very kind of you, Nigina, Listen; I'll try to describe them to you. My sister Ann is a tall slender girl of 18, with fair hair and wide-open merry grey eyes. She has a small straight nose and rather big mouth with even white teeth.

- Oh, your sister is a real beauty!

- Yes, she is rather good-looking. My brother Masrur is medium height, with dark hair, a broad forehead, brown eyes a pleasant smile. He is a handsome young man of 20. He wears a brown suit and a white shirt with a bright tie.

- All right, give me the tickets. I'll try to find them. At what place are they to wait for you?

- Near the entrance. It's really very kind of you, Nigina. You a real friend!

11. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. What did Coleman look like? 2. Why was Coleman popular? 3. Is it good to be popular? 4. Why did Maggie try to save Coleman? 5. Why did Coleman go into the field where the bull was? 6. Why was Coleman ashamed of himself? 7. Did Maggie tell people about what had happened to Coleman? 8. Do you think Maggie acted rightly? Give your reasons. 9. What did Coleman I think of Maggie's appearance? 10. Did Coleman like Maggie? 11. Why did Coleman like Maggie? 12. Why did Coleman want to speak to Maggie's father? 13. What sort of man was the barman? 14. Why hadn't Coleman heard of Maggie's brother? 15. What was the matter with her brother? 16. Was Coleman right in beating up the barman? 17. Do you think Maggie ought to have told Coleman about her brother? 18. Do you think Coleman was right in giving Maggie up? 19. What would you have done in his place? 20. Do you think Coleman and Maggie would have been happy if they had married?

12. Use the correct prepositions or adverbs where necessary. Вставьте по необходимости пропущенные предлоги или наречия. Дар ҷойи зарурӣ пешоянд ё зарф истифода кунед.

1. Coleman went to shoot ... ducks ... the end ... the valley. 2. He had to go ... the hill and then ... several fields. 3. As he I was walking a gun ... his arm, he suddenly heard a big noise ... him. 4. ... the corner ... his eyes he saw a girl is coming ... the wall ... a stick ... her hand. 5. She ran ... the bull and struck him ... the nose ... her stick. 6. Coleman had been afraid ... the bull. 7. He had been afraid ... his life. 8. ... the fair Coleman looked ... Maggie ... the heads ... people ... a long time. 9. Coleman looked forward ... the dance because he wanted to dance ... Maggie. 10. He knew that she was light ... s her feet. 11. When Maggie cycled ... home, Coleman followed her ... his bike. 12. They walked together ... her home. 13. When they reached ... her home, Coleman promised ... Maggie that he would come ... Friday to speak ... her father and ask ... her.

13. Use words of opposite meaning in the following sentences. Используйте слова противоположного значения в следующих предложениях. Дар чумлаҳои зерин калимаҳои зидмаъноро истифода кунед.

1. Maggie was a good-looking girl. 2. She was badly dressed at the party. 3. She had a heavy stick in her hand. 4. The bull ran very slowly. 5. Coleman was a small, weak man. 6. Coleman was very ugly. 7. He was selling cattle at the fair. 8. It was a cold evening. 9. He had forgotten Maggie. 10. The days were growing shorter. 11. There were black clouds in the sky. 12. That was a wise remark.

14. Arrange the synonyms in pairs. Use them in sentences of your own. Расставьте синонимы попарно. Используйте их в собственных предложениях. Ҳақлимаҳои ҳамаъноро ҷуфт гузоред. Онҳоро дар чумлаҳои худ истифода кунед.

start, return, wise, good-looking, decide, immediately, go back, go off, at once, clever, begin, leave, handsome, make up one's mind.

15. Agree with or correct the following statements. Согласитесь с или исправьте следующие утверждения. Ба чумлаҳои зерин розӣ шавед ё онҳоро дуруст кунед.

Maggie was a very good-looking girl. 2. Coleman was very popular boy. 3. Coleman was very fond of bulls and liked to race with them. 4. Coleman was afraid that Maggie would tell people how he had run from the bull. 5. Maggie went to the fair to buy cattle. 6. Maggie was a very poor dancer. 7. Everybody admired Maggie's brother. 8. Coleman did not care what people would say if he married Maggie. 9. Coleman beat up the barman because he was unhappy. 10. Coleman married several times.

16. Retell the story from the viewpoint of... - Перескажите рассказ с точки зрения... – Ҳикояро аз нуқтаи назари нақл кунед:

1) Coleman, 2) Maggie, 3) somebody who likes Maggie and is sorry that Coleman did not marry her, 4) somebody who does not like Maggie and disapproves of Coleman liking her and approves of his way of acting.

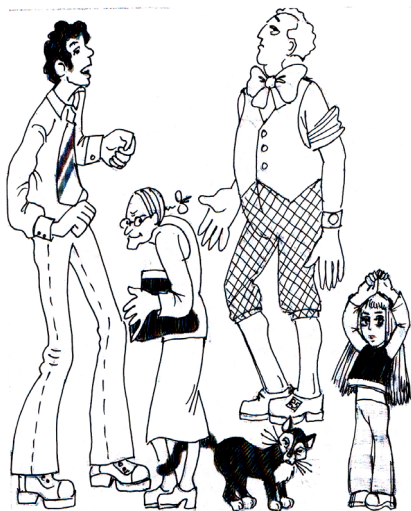
17. Make up a dialogue between two village people. Составте диалог между двумя сельскими жителями. Дар байни ду сокини деҳот муколама ташкил кунед.

- a) both of whom like both Maggie and Coleman,
- b) one of whom likes Maggie but does not like Coleman, the other likes Coleman, but does not like Maggie,
- c) who like neither Maggie nor Coleman.

18. Characterise – Характеризуйте. Тавсиф кунед.

a) Maggie, b) Coleman.

19. Look at the picture and describe the persons. Посмотрите на картинку и опишите людей. Ба расм нигаред ва шахсҳои дар расм бударо тасвир кунед.



Use these words. Используйте эти слова. Калимаҳои зеринро истифода кунед: small, big, tall, round, large, long, short, thin, even, head, hair, eyes, lashes, mouth, nose, ears, teeth, neck, shoulders, body, arms, hands, fingers, legs, feet, pretty, beautiful, handsome, ugly, pleasant to look at.

20. Topics for Conversation. Темы для разговора. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба

1. Do you think you can ever judge of a person's character after meeting him just once?
2. How far does a person's face show his character?
3. Do you think that climate has any influence on a person's character?

4. Give some examples of good manners.
5. Do you think that everybody should take an interest in clothes?

21. Describe how each of the following people might be dressed – a) an elderly lady going shopping b) a man cleaning his car c) two teenagers (a boy and a girl) out to attract attention.

22. Describe: 1) your own appearance; 2) one of your friends; 3) some very popular character you know; 4) any strange character you have come across in your life.

23. Fill in the blanks with the help of your dictionary. Вставьте пропущенные слова с помощью словаря. Цойхои холиро бо истифодаи лугат пурра кунед.

1. a breath of ... 2. a ray of ... 3. a flake of ... 4. a spot of ...
5. a crumb of ... 6. a speck of ... 7. a drop of ... 8. a gust of...

Proverbs

1. Beauty lies in lover's eyes.
2. Custom is second nature.
3. Handsome is as handsome does.
4. Honesty is the best policy.
5. He that is full of himself is very empty.
6. Lost time is never found again.
7. Don't trouble till trouble troubles you.
8. The spirit is willing but the flesh is weak.
9. When angry, count a hundred.
10. Live and learn.
11. Least said, soonest mended.
12. The more haste the less speed.

Sayings

1. A smiling face may not keep you out of trouble, but it is a great help in getting you out.
2. When two men quarrel, there is generally one fool present.
3. A good listener makes more friends than a good talker.
4. Half a truth is often a great lie. (B. Franklin)
5. One of the surest ways of judging a man is by his laugh.

Jokes

A man bought a canary from a pet shop. "You're sure this bird can sing?" - he asked suspiciously. "He is a grand singer,»! - replied the shop owner. The customer left. A week later he returned. "Say! This bird you sold me is lame!" - "Well, what did you want to buy, a singer or a dancer?"

Young man: I'm seeking your daughter's hand. Have you any objections?

The girl's father: No, take the hand that's always in my pocket.

A girl was interested in having an artist for her husband, but her mother preferred her marrying a soldier. One day the girl asked her mother why she wanted to choose a soldier husband for her.

"You see," said the mother, "a soldier husband has some advantages of education and discipline over the civilian: he can make beds, sew, cook and what's more, he is already used to taking and obeying orders."

Easy reading

Keeping Up Appearance

An elderly couple had the terrible experience of waking up one morning to find their house on fire. It was winter and the weather was bitterly cold, the ground was covered with snow. They quickly, threw on some warm clothing over their light night dress, gathered their most valuable things, and ran outside. By this time the house was burning like a candle and the roof was in danger of falling in. The neighbours had rushed in to help and one had telephoned for the fire-brigade. Suddenly the wife rushed into the burning house, saying that she had forgotten something important. It was a thoughtless thing to do and she might well have lost her life. But she was soon back quite safe and smiling with satisfaction. She had obviously found what she wanted. When she was asked what had made her take such a terrible risk, she replied that she had gone to get her false teeth, without which she could not possibly have faced the fire-brigade.

Find opposites of the following words and phrases. Найдите противоположного значения слов и словосочетаний следующего. Зид-маъноии ибора ва калимаҳои зеринро ёбед.

a young couple
a pleasant experience
useless things
walk slowly

in great danger
unimportant
real

24. Establish relationships. Установите отношения. – Алокаи байни калимахоро муаян кунед.

What connection was there between? Какая связь была между? Дар байни чи алоқа мавҷуд буд?

1. the burning house
2. the elderly woman
3. the fire-brigade
4. one of the neighbours
5. false teeth
6. two policemen
7. a doctor?

25. Read with a dictionary. Прочитайте со словарем. Бо истифодаи луғат хонед.

The Florence Nightingale

sanitary [ˈsænt(ə)rɪ]	division [dɪˈvɪʒ(ə)n]
conditions [kənˈdɪʃ(ə)n]	bomb [bɒm]
committee [kəˈmɪtɪ]	demobilize [ˌdiːˈməʊb(ə)laɪz]
service [ˈsɜːvɪs]	heroism [ˈherəʊɪz(ə)m]
catastrophe [kəˈtæstrəfi]	

The award was established in 1912 in honour of a fine daughter of the British people, Florence Nightingale (1820–1910). She spent her life nursing the sick and wounded, worked to improve sanitary conditions in hospitals of different countries and founded in Britain the first ever nurses' training school. The International Committee of the Red Cross gives the award to nurses of Red Cross volunteers for selfless service in caring for the sick and wounded during wartime or natural catastrophes.

Anna Kuznetsova has been awarded the Florence Nightingale Medal and diploma. It was sent to from Geneva.

Anna began to work at a flour mill. Ten days before the Germans attacked our country, she joined the Young Communist League.

She studied in the 7th form of a young worker' school took nurses' courses. When in October, 1941, the fascists were threatening Moscow; she joined the 5th Division of People's Volunteers and was sent to work in a field hospital. The battles were heavy and bloody. The doctors and nurses worked for days out rest.

The fascist flyers liked to attack buildings over which flags with red crosses. One such raid left the hospital in ruins. Many of the patients and staff were killed.

The shock wave from a bomb that exploded near Anna lifted her up in the air and threw her to the ground. She was unconscious for five days and when she came to herself in a hospital she found that she could neither speak nor hear. When she recovered later, they wanted to demobilize her. Anna did not agree and she was allowed to go back to the front.

26. Find suitable endings to the following unfinished sentences. Найдите подходящие окончания для следующих незаконченных предложений. Барои ҷумлаҳои зерини нотаи мувофиқи роғи гузоре.

1. The Florence
Nightingale medal
 2. Anna Kuznetsova began
to work
 3. She joined the YCL
 4. In October, 1941,
 5. The fascist flyers liked to
attack
 6. After one of such raids
 7. They wanted to demobilize
her
- Anna went back to the front and
After the war Anna returned
She has been awarded two
orders of the Red Star

ten days before the Germans
attacked our country, carried
125 wounded soldiers away
from the battlefield, and several
medals, the Florence Nightingale
medal among them.
Anna was unconscious for five
days.
was established in 1912.
Anna Kuznetsova joined the
army.
at a flour mill, to Moscow.
hospitals and school buildings.
because she could neither hear
nor speak.

REVISION III

In the third half-term you have learnt the following words:

1. Nouns	2. Verbs	3. Adjectives	4. Adverbs	5. Prepositions
lesson 7 fair silence instruction enthusiasm example exhibition musician occasion nice face lesson 8 path birth effect shot sunflower truck lesson 9 lashes bicycle duck harm pair pleasure suit quarrel valley wheel (wonder) 26 (27)	arrange deal devote display lesson 8 arrest count face impress recognize lesson 9 make up one's mind pronounce sweep wonder 13	lesson 7 distant magnificent lesson 8 capable cruel firm intelligent (straight) lesson 9 ashamed bright even fair handsome good-looking ugly 13 (14)	lesson 8 attentively probably straight	lesson 7 according to

Summing up

Nouns 26 (27)

Verbs 13

Adj. 13

Adv. 3

Preposition 1

56 (58) words

1. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

necessary – unnecessary; clear – unclear; interesting – uninteresting; smiling – unsmiling; important – unimportant; kind – unkind; pleased – displeased; happy – unhappy; appear – disappear; approve – disapprove; certain – uncertain.

2. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
realize	realization	impress	impression
settle	settlement	improve	information
sign	signature	please	improvement
appear	appearance	approve	pleasure
arrive	arrival	advise	approval
practice	practice	choose	
use	use		

3. Form adjectives from the following nouns. Translate them into Tajik or Russian. Образуйте прилагательные от следующих существительных. Переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Аз исмҳои зерин сифат созед. Онҳоро ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Model: care, careful, careless

help, joy, thought, hope, use, doubt, harm, law, pain, power.

4. Give the opposites of the following words. Приведите антонимы следующих слов. Муқобилмаънои калимаҳои зеринро ёбед.

kindly	foolish
ugly	alive
patient	distant
upstairs	powerful
inside	boring
catch a train	stop
get off a bus	accept an or
fail to do sth.	friend
drop sth.	heavy
cool	birth

5. Complete the following sentences with the help of your dictionary.

Чумлаҳои зеринро бо ёрии луғат анҷом диҳед.

1. The man in charge of a library is a (secretary, reader, librarian, councilor, and clerk).

2. The man who steers a plane is a (bomber, pilot, director, and steersman).

3. An optimist is a man (who tests eyesight, a famous man, who looks on the bright side, a silly person).

4. A man who writes books is (an artist, a journalist, a reporter, an author).

5. People who watch a football match are (referees, umpires, onlookers, spectators, audience).

6. A man who writes articles for a newspaper is (an editor, a journalist, a publisher, a stationer).

7. A boy who ill-treats smaller boys is (a hero, a coward, a bully, a friend, an enemy).

8. Another name for a doctor is (chemist, physician, veterinary, and dentist).

6. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Перевидите на таджикиски или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷики ё русӣ тарҷума намоед.

1. How can you get back your purse if you leave it in a bus? 2. "Get down!" says Mother to five-year-old, Tony. What may Tony be doing? 3. Which of these things do you get on (off) and which do you get in, into, out of? (a car, a horse, bicycle, a train, a plane, a bus, a bed, a boat) 4. What time did you get in last night? 5. The last train gets in just before midnight. Give another word for 'get in'. 6. "Those children are getting on my nerve s." What may they be doing? 7. How do you feel if you get through an exam? 8. When do you usually get up in the morning?

7. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Перевидите на русский или английский язык. Ба забонҳои русӣ ва ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед

1. What did you think you would gain by that strange mark? 2. Aren't you ashamed of your words? 3. They displayed little enthusiasm when they learned they had been chosen for the task. 4. He is so proud he will rather starve to death than ask for a piece of bread. 5. We could move forward very slow because we had to dig our way through the deep snow. 6. When we reached the end of the valley, a wheel came off and our car turned over. 7. Some shots were heard and somewhat later the dead body of a man was found in the neighbouring barn.

8. Put in the correct prepositions or adverbs where necessary. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги или наречия. Пешоянд ё зарфҳои дурустро гузоред.

1. ... Moscow we travelled ... the famous metro, getting each stop to admire the beautiful stations. 2. Moscow is full ... theatres and museums ... all kinds. 3. ... several occasions we saw plays dealing ... problems that are ... special inters ... young people. 4. ... short, the people ... Moscow are proud ... their city. 5. ... fact, it had never occurred ... me to look the matter ... that light. 6. Mr. Simon told ... his wife that he would join ... her ... Switzerland. 7. The dog let ... a howl and ran ... the field. 8. We were surprised to learn that the wont we had met ... the farm was French ... birth. 9. The border-guards asked people ... dogs whom they needed ... guard duty. 10. The teacher thinks very highly ... this boy. She says he is capable ... great things. Already now everybody is impressed ... his pictures. 11. We saw John walking ... the fields ... the end . the valley ... a gun ... his arm. 12. Coleman kept... thinking . Maggie, feeling that he couldn't do ... her. 13. He looked ... her ... a long time ... he made ... his mind to ask her ... a dance

LESSON 10: HOBBIES

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать перево-дить, пере-сказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салохият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда та-вонад.

for the sake of [seik]
 medicine ['medsin]
 necessary ['nesəs(ə)rɪ]
 cheerful ['ʃiəf(ə)l]
 sharp [ʃɑ:p]
 Chalk [ʃɔ:k]
 Sheet [ʃi:t]
 connect [kə'nekt]
 rather ['rɑ:ðə]
 oil [ɔɪl]

Relative ['relətv]
 painter ['peɪntə]
 declare [dɪ'kleə]
 terror ['terə]
 interfere [,ɪntə'fɪə]
 accept [ək'sept]
 astonishment [ə'stɒnɪʃmənt]
 envelope ['envɪləup]
 Congratulation[kənɪgræʃu'leɪ](ə)n]
 [kən,græʃu'leɪ](ə)n]

ART FOR HEART'S SAKE

"Take your medicine, sir," said Koppel.

"No!" snapped Collis P. Ellsworth.

"But it is Collis for you, sir."

"No!"

"Its doctor's orders."

"No!"

When the doctor came, Koppel told him, "I can't do anything with him. He won't take his medicine. He doesn't want me to read to him. He hates the radio, lie, doesn't like anything."

Doctor Caswell received the information with his usual professional calm. The old gentleman was quite well **for a man** of seventy-six. But he **had to be kept from buying** things. This was a kind of mania with him. He bought everything he saw – cars horses, factories. His money was disappearing fast. It was **necessary** to get him to take an interest in something that would make him forget about business.

Collis P. Ellsworth was sitting in his chair. He turned to answer the doctors' cheerful greeting. His reddish eyes were looking at the doctor disapprovingly.

The doctor sat down **next to the old man**. "I've got something to suggest to you," he said cheerfully.

"What is it? More trips? More rubbish to keep me away from the office? How would you **like** up art?"

The old man answer was **sharp** "Rubbish!"

"I don't mean you should go in for it seriously" said the doctor. "Just fool around with **chalk** and pencils"

To his great surprise the old man suddenly said almost childishly. "But, Caswell, how shall I start playing around with chalk, that is it, **I am foolish enough** to start?"

I've thought of that. A friend of mine is head of an art school.

I can get a student from his school to come here once a week and **give you lessons in drawing**. If you don't like it after while you can stop it.

It was difficult to say whether Ellsworth had really become interested in art, or whether he was secretly **laughing to himself**. While looking at Doctor Caswell, Swain and Koppel. But one thing was certain – Ellsworth having stopped buying things, his **relatives** were greatly pleased.

Now the doctor allowed Ellsworth to visit, together with Swain, the famous Lathrop Gallery and other exhibitions. The results were excellent. It seemed that the old man had forgotten about business and had become interested only in art. He wished to know everything about the galleries, and the **painters** who exhibited their **paintings** in them. How were the galleries run? Who chose the pictures for the exhibitions? That was what often asked.

When spring came, Ellsworth **painted** an awful picture which he called "Trees Dressed in White". Anybody else would have been ashamed of it, but suddenly he **declared** that he was going to exhibit it in **the Summer Show** at the Lathrop Gallery. His declarations made Caswell and Swain think that the old man **had gone mad**, the Lathrop Gallery being one of the finest in New York. The Summer Show at the Lathrop Gallery was the biggest art exhibition of the year. The greatest wish of every painter the United States was a Lathrop Prize. And Ellsworth was going to exhibit his awful picture there! Yes, the old man must have gone mad!

"If the papers learn of this, Mr Ellsworth will become a laughing-stock. This must be stopped," said Swain, his eyes full of real terror. But Doctor Caswell was of a different opinion. He cut Swain short, saying, "By no means! We cannot interfere with him now. This would spoil everything. Let him send his picture."

To the greatest astonishment of all three "Trees Dressed in White" was accepted for the Lathrop Show. "Not only is Ellsworth mad," thought Koppel, "but the Lathrop Gallery must be mad too."

The painting being placed in a dark corner, very few people noticed it. Swain went to the gallery one afternoon and awfully ashamed when he saw the picture. Some laughing students had stopped before it and Swain could not make him come nearer. He **was afraid to hear** what they were saying.

During the exhibition the old man **continued taking his lessons**. Very little was said about his own picture there. He was unusually cheerful. Every time Swain entered the room, he found Ellsworth laughing to himself. Maybe Koppel was right and old man had really gone mad. But what about the Lathrop Clery? Was it mad too?

Two days before the closing of the exhibition, Mr Ellsworth received a letter. Swain and the doctor happened to be in the room when Koppel brought to him a long brown **envelope**.

“Read it to me,” the old man suggested. “My eyes are tired **from painting.**”

Koppel took the letter and read, “**It gives the Lathrop Gallery great pleasure to announce** that the First Prize of a thousand dollars has been awarded to Collis P. Ellsworth for his painting “Trees Dressed in White”.

Swain was **too astonished** to say anything. Doctor Caswell managed to say, “**Congratulations, Mr Ellsworth!** Fine, fine. ... Well, now you see yourself that art is much more exciting than business.”

“Art’s rubbish!” snapped the old man. “I bought the Lathrop Gallery last month.”

(After Ruth Goldberg)

1. Read and translate the following words. Прочитайте и переведите следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва тарҷума кунед:

declaration [ˌdeklə'reɪʃ(ə)n]

childish [ˈtʃaɪldɪʃ]

exhibit [ɪg'zɪbɪt]

gallery ['gæl(ə)rɪ]

information [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃ(ə)n]

institute [ˈɪn(t)stɪtju:t]

vase [vɑ:z]

foolishness ['fu:lɪʃnəs]

head [hed]= headmaster,

director

to place [pleɪs] = to put

professional [prə'feʃ(ə)n(ə)l]

mania ['meɪniə]

tube [tju:b]

2. Read and translate into Tajik or Russian. Прочитайте и переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Хонед ва ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

connect, connective, connection

cheer, cheerful, cheerfulness

interfere, interfering, interference [ˌɪntə'fɪə(ə)n(t)s]

fool, foolish, foolishness

astonish, astonishing, astonishment, astonished

sharpen, sharp, sharpness

declare, declarative [dɪ'klærətɪv], declaration [ˌdeklə'reɪʃ(ə)n]

3. Read and translates the words in bold type. Переведите слова выделенные. Калимаҳои сиёҳ кардашударо тарҷума кунед.

1. For the sake of means because of somebody or in somebody's interest. I'll help you for your sister's sake. I'll help you because of your sister. You must do this for your own sake. You must do this in

your own interest. "Art for Heart's Sake" means that the old man had to take up art in order to save his heart, so that he would not fall ill.

2. When we are ill we take medicine to get better. I had a bad headache, but after I took some medicine the pain stopped.

3. A necessary thing is something that is needed. Is it necessary to write this exercise? Do I need to write this exercise?

4. Cheerful means bringing or suggesting happiness. The old man answered the doctor's cheerful greeting. Everybody was shouting cheerfully. It was a wet and cheerless day, we felt so unhappy.

5. This knife is very sharp see that you don't cut your finger! You notice everything; you have got very sharp eyes. His answer was short and sharp.

6. We use chalk to write on the blackboard and pens and pencils to write in exercise-books.

7. A sheet is a thin piece of paper, metal or some other material. Have you got a sheet of paper? I want to write a letter. Give the child a sheet of paper and let him draw a picture.

8. To connect means to join or be joined. The two sides of the river are connected by a wooden bridge. These two towns are connected by a railway.

9. The picture is rather nice. The picture is quite nice. It is rather cold today. It is quite cold today.

10. A painter is a person who paints pictures. Picasso was a great painter. The pictures painted by a painter are called paintings.

11. Cooking oil is made from sunflowers. Oil cakes are good food for cattle. Pictures can be painted in oil-colours water-colours.

12. Your aunts, uncles and the members of your family are your relatives. Your nearest relatives are your sisters and brothers your mother and your father.

13. To declare means to make clearly known to everybody. The trade union leader declared the meeting open. Ellsworth suddenly declared that he was going to send his picture to the Lathrop show.

14. Terror is extremely great fear. The hunter ran from the lion in great terror.

15. Please do not interfere in my business. When two grown-up people are talking, children must not interfere. Children must not start talking to them before they have finished. The doctor said that they could not interfere with the old man's intentions. It was not good to try to stop him from doing what wanted.

16. Astonishment is great surprise. To our great astonishment Jim did not win the race. To everybody's astonishment Ellsworth's picture was accepted for the Lathrop show.

17. To accept means to receive what one is offered or given. The child gladly accepted our present.

18. Put a stamp on the envelope and post the letter. Mother opened the envelope and took out the letter.

19. Congratulations are the good wishes we express on some happy occasion. We offered our friend congratulations upon his success. I congratulated him on his marriage.

4. Sending a Telegram. Как послать телеграмму. Мактуб фири-стодан.

Suhrob: Will you send this telegram, please?

Clerk: Certainly. Let me just count the words.

Suhrob: I think you'll find there are thirteen, seven in the message and six in the address.

Clerk: Yes, that's right, thirteen words. But you've forgotten down your own name and address on the form.

Suhrob: Oh, sorry. What address shall I give? I'm a visitor here.

Clerk: Your hotel address will do. Do you want to send it replies paid?

Suhrob: No, I'm not expecting a reply. But can you tell me when you will arrive? It's rather urgent.

Clerk: It should be there in about three hours. That'll be fifty two kopecks, please.

Suhrob: Here you are. Is that all?

Clerk. Yes, that's all. Thank you. Here's the receipt.

5. Read and learn by heart. Прочитайте и выучите наизусть. Хонед ва азёд кунед.

Watching TV

- What's on tonight?
- Let me see. At six there's the news, then a discussion of TV news.
- We've missed that anyway. It's nearly six-thirty now.
- There's a detective story from half past six to seven.
- Good. Switch on the set. We'll watch that. Anything interesting later on?

- Yes, an hour's variety show from seven to eight.
- That's fine. The screen's rather dark, isn't it? Can you adjust it?
- How's that? Shall I turn up the volume?
- That's much better. No, turn the volume down a bit it's too loud as it is.
- Right. Now let's pull up some chairs and make ourselves comfortable.

6. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский или таджикский язык. Ба забонҳои русӣ ва тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед

1. He won't take his medicine. 2. Mr. Sodiқ being rather weak said that it was enough for the first lesson. 3. Swain came more and more often, the old man having asked him to come. 4. Sodiқ having stopped buying things, his relatives were greatly pleased. 5. That was what he often asked. 6. If the papers learn of this Mr. Sodiқ will become a laughing-stock. 7. He cut Swain short. 8. Swain could not make himself come nearer. 9. But what about the Lathrop Gallery?

7. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зеринҷавоб гардонед.

1. Was Ellsworth an artist? 2. Did he take his medicine regularly? 3. Was Doctor Caswell Mr Ellsworth's friend? 4. Did Ellsworth like Doctor Caswell's suggestion? 5. Was Frank Swain a painter? 6. Were Ellsworth's relatives pleased with his new hobby? 7. Was the Lathrop Gallery a museum? 8. Did the Lathrop Gallery accept Ellsworth's painting? 9. Was Ellsworth really interested in art? 10. Was art good for his heart?

8. Put in the missing question word and ask your classmate to answer the questions. Вставьте пропущенные вопросительные слова и попросите одноклассников ответить на вопросы. Калимаҳои саволиро мӯвофиқро ба ҷойҳои ҳолӣ гузоред ва аз ҳамсинфатон хоҳиш намоед, ки ба савол ҷавоб гардонад.

1. ... was Koppel not pleased with Mr Ellsworth? 2. ... was Mr Ellsworth's hobby? 3. ... were his relatives worried about him? 4. ... new hobby did his doctor suggest to him? 5. ... was Mr Ellsworth's art teacher? 6. ... did young Swain accept this job? 7. ... did Frank Swain work at night? 8. ... often did he come to Mr Ellsworth's place? 9 ... do you know about the Lathrop Gallery? 10. ... was everybody so shocked

to hear that Mr Ellsworth's picture had been accepted? 11. ... was the picture placed in the exhibition hall? 12. ... did young Swain not want to go near his pupil's picture? 13. ... did the Lathrop Gallery award Mr Ellsworth the First Prize for his picture? 14. ... did Mr Ellsworth want to show his friends and relatives by buying the Lathrop Gallery?

9. Give the opposites of the following words. Приведите антонимы следующих слов. Зидмаъноии калимаҳои зеринро диҳед.

clever, forget, hate, birth, dry, employ, succeed, cool, pleased, different, approve.

10. Choose from List B words or phrases which mean the same or almost the same as the words in List A. Выберите из списка B слова или фразы, которые означают то же самое или почти то же самое, что и слова в списке A. Аз рӯйхатаи B калима ё ибораеро интихоб намo, ки ҳаммаъно ё тақрибан ҳаммаъноии калимаҳои дар рӯйхати A мебошад.

List A: famous, admire, immediately, answer, continue, cost, connect, discover, audience, astonishment.

List B: join, go on, find out, outstanding, surprise, a group of listeners, at once, reply, think highly of, prize.

11. Fill in prepositions where necessary. При необходимости вставьте пропущенные предлоги. Дар ҷойи зарури пешояндҳоро гузоред.

1. Anybody else would have been ashamed ... the picture, but Ellsworth decided to exhibit it ... the Summer Show ... the Lathrop Gallery. 2. His young teacher was full ... terror but Doctor Caswell was ... a different opinion. 3. He said they could not interfere ... the old man's intention. 4. ... the greatest astonishment ... everybody, the picture was accepted ... the Show. 5. It was placed ... a dark corner and very few people stopped ... it. 6. When Swain entered ... the gallery, he heard some laughing students discuss ... the picture.

12. Who said it? When? Why? Кто это сказал? Когда? Почему? - Кӣ гуфт инро? Кай? Барои чӣ?

1. Rubbish! 2. You will have to look at what you are drawing. 3. I can't do a thing with him. 4. How would you like to take up art? 5. It looks rather nice. 6. Not only is Mr. Ellsworth mad, but the Lathrop

Gallery must be mad too. 7. If the papers learn of his, Mr. Ellsworth will become a laughing-stock. 8. My eyes are tired of pointing. 9. We can't interfere with him now. 10. Art's rubbish!

13. Retell the story from the point of view of. Пересказать историю с точки зрения. Хикояро аз нуктаи назари нақл кунед.

1) Koppel, Doctor Caswell, 3) Collis P. Ellsworth, 4) Frank Swain, 5) an art critic, 6) one of Ellsworth's relatives.

14. Make up dialogues between. Составьте диалоги между. Дар байнимуколама тартиб диҳед.

1) Mr. Ellsworth and one of his relatives, 2) Koppel and Frank Swain, 3) Frank Swain and one of his fellow students, 4) Doctor Caswell and one of Mr Ellsworth's relatives, 5) Two modern art critics at the Lathrop Gallery, 6) Two visitors at the Lathrop Gallery, 7) Air Ellsworth and Doctor Caswell (after Ellsworth has been awarded the First Prize).

15. Topics for Conversation. Тема для беседы. Мавзӯҳо барои мусоҳиба.

1. How do you like to spend your free time? 2. What are your chief hobbies at present? 3. Are you fond of walking long distances in the countryside? 4. What kind of countryside do you like to go walking in? 5. Speak about the pleasure of a bicycle ride. 6. Why do many young people like a motor cycle so much you enjoy listening to the radio? If so, what kind of motor cycle do you like? 7. Describe the kind of parties you enjoy all. 8. Do you enjoy a simple camping holiday? Give your reasons. 9. Speak about a) some artist you know well or whose works you like, b) an art exhibition you have visited and a lot.

16. More topics for conversation. Дополнительные темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳои иловагӣ барои мусоҳиба.

1. What services does a post-office offer? 2. Describe the post-office in your home town or village. 3. What do you have to do to send a telegram? 4. What do you have to do if you want to send money by post?

17. Make up dialogues. Составьте диалог. Муколама тартиб диҳед.

1. You are going to the post-office to make a long-distance meet a friend on the way and she asks you questions about it.

2. You are going to send a parcel to your grandmother.

You ask a friend to help you to get the things and send it off.

3. You need envelopes, writing-paper, stamps and post-cards. You buy them at the post-office. The clerk is very helpful.

18. Use your dictionary and make as many new words as you can from each of the following words. Translate them into Tajik. Используйте словарь и образуйте как можно больше новых слов от каждого из следующих слов. Переведите их на таджикский язык. Бо истифодаи лугат аз калимаҳои зерин ҳарчи бештар калимаҳои нав созед. Онҳоро бо забони тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

Example: part – partner – parting – partly, etc.

work, pass, some, hard, will, self, sweet, short, out, p power.

Proverbs

1. Life is short, art is long.

2. Every man has his hobby-horse.

3. There is no accounting for tastes.

4. All work and no play make Jack a dull boy.

5. A bad workman quarrels with his tools.

6. Slow but sure.

7. It is never too late to learn.

8. Every man to his taste.

Sayings

1. “Twice happy is the man who has a hobby,” said a wise philosopher, “for he has two worlds to live in.”

2. He who laughs last laughs best; but he who laughs first sees the point.

3. Many a man owes his success to the advice he did not take from others.

4. It is much better to know the value of a thing than its price.

Quotations

1. It is impossible to enjoy idling thoroughly unless one has plenty of work to do. (Jerome K. Jerome)

2. Every man desires to live long, but no man would be old. (Jonathan Swift)

3. The reason why worry kills more people than work is that more people worry than work. (Robert Frost)

4. When people agree with me I always feel that I must be wrong. (Oscar Wilde)

5. Human beings may be divided into three classes: those who are toiled to death, those who are worried to death, and those who are bored to death. (Winston Churchill)

At the Opera House

Once an old man came to the city from his village. For the first time in his life he went to the Opera House. When the overture was over and the soloist started singing, he asked his neighbour, "I say, what's that man below shaking a stick at that man above him for?"

His neighbour looked at him in surprise and said, "That man's the conductor. He's not shaking the stick at him at all, he is waving his baton."

Bui the answer did not satisfy the old man.

"Then what's the man above him telling about?" he asked in a loud voice.

Easy Readin

A Modern Painting

An American millionaire bought a picture from a modern artist whose works were very famous. The millionaire thought of painting to be a very good one, for he had paid a lot of money for it. But when he wanted to have the painting hung up in his living-room, no one could understand which the top was of it, which was the bottom of it.

In order to solve the problem, the millionaire had the picture hung up on the wall and invited the painter to dinner, lie told him nothing about his trouble.

During the dinner the artist looked at the picture several times. Then he put on his glasses and looked at it again. When dinner was over, he went up to the painting and looked at it more closely. And only then did he understand that it had been- hung upside down.

"Dear me!" he exclaimed. "You have hung the painting upside down!"

"Really?" said the millionaire. "Why didn't you tell me so-immediately?"

"Well, you see," said the painter. "I wasn't quite sure myself at first."

19. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед

1. Why did the millionaire buy the painting? 2. What problem did he have in connection with it? 3. Why did he ask the painter to dinner? 4. Why did the painter look at the picture repeatedly? 5. Do you appreciate modern painting? Give your reasons.

20. Read and translate into Tajik or Russian. Прочитайте и переведите на русский или таджикский язык. Хонед ва ба забони русӣ ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

Read with a dictionary.

The motor Bike

One Saturday evening Ann rang the bell at John's house. John's mother opened the door. "I think John is still in his shed," she said.

"What is he doing?" asked Ann.

"Repairing his motor-bike," his mother answered. "I'd like to throw that motor-bike away. He'll have an accident one day."

Ann went into the shed. There was a strong smell of oil. John was sitting beside his bike. He had a spanner in one hand and an oil-can in the other. He was very proud of his bike. It was an old machine, but he had built a new engine for it.

"Hello!" he said when he saw Ann. "I've almost finished. Give me the carburettor. No, stupid, that's a magneto!"

Ann watched John while he was fixing the carburettor. "You are clever!" she said.

"Oh, it's easy when you know how," said John. He mended a broken wire and put a new lamp in the tail light. Then he tried the brakes. "Fine!" he said. "Now she's ready for the road." He cleaned his hands, opened the shed door, and pushed the motorbike into the street. "Would you like a ride?" he asked Ann.

Ann did not enjoy rides on John's motor-bike. He went very fast, and she was always frightened. Ann climbed unhappily on to the back seat.

"I've forgotten the petrol," John suddenly said. "I'll get a can from the garage while you take the top off the tank."

Ann got off the bike. She did not know where the tank was, and it was dark. She remembered that there was a box of matches in her bag. By the light of a match she soon found the tank. She took off the top and looked in.

“John!” she shouted to him. “Don’t worry. The tank is nearly full!”

At that moment the match burnt her fingers. “Ouch!” she cried and hopped the match. It fell right into the petrol tank. Ann lumped back just in time. The next moment pieces of the motorbike were flying through the air. John’s parents rushed out of the house.

“Are you hurt?” John’s father asked Ann.

Ann was crying. “I don’t think I am,” she said. “But look at the motor bike I’ve completely ruined it!”

“Wonderful!” John’s mother said in Ann’s ear. “You were always clever, my dear.”

John, of course, did not agree.

21. Who and when said the following? Кто и когда это сказал? Кӣ ва кай гуфтааст?

1. John is still in his shed. 2. You are clever! 3. No, stupid! That’s a magneto! 4. Would you like a ride? 5. The tank is nearly full! 6. Are you hurt? 7. You were always clever, my dear.

22. Without looking at the text, try and put the following sentences in their correct order. Не глядя на текст, попробуйте расположить следующие предложения в правильном порядке. Ба матн нигоҳ накарда, кӯшиш кунед, ки ҷумлаҳои зеринро ба тартиб гузоред.

1. By the light of a match Ann soon found the tank. 2. At that moment the match burnt her fingers. 3. Ann did not know where the tank was, and it was dark. 4. The match fell right into the petrol tank. 5. She took off the top and looked in. 6. Suddenly she remembered that there were matches in her bag. 7. Pieces of the bike were flying through the air. 8. The tank was nearly full of petrol. 9. She dropped the match. 10. Ann jumped back just in time.

LESSON 11.

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен читать текст, переводить, рассказать текста и использовать встроенный диалог на речи.

Салохият: Хонанда бояд матро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда тавонад.

courage ['kʌrɪdʒ]
as well [æs wel]
habit ['hæbɪt]
castle ['kɑ:sl]
guest[gest]
evil ['i:v(ə)l]
purpose ['pɜ:pəs]
murder ['mɜ:də]
approach [ə'prəʊʃ]
stain [steɪn]

fulfil [ful'fɪl]
victim .['vɪktɪm]
tremble ['trembl]
shake [ʃeɪk]
stare [stɛə]
advise [əd'vaɪz]
advice [əd'vaɪs]
cause [kɔ:z]
share [ʃɛə]

MACBETH

Duncan, King of Scotland, had a near relative who was called Macbeth. He was a great and powerful lord, **famous for his courage** and success **in times of war**. A great battle had been fought and won. Macbeth, together with another Scottish general called Banquo, was returning from the battlefield across some wild and empty country. There they were stopped by the appearance of three strange, terrible figures. Their wild dress gave them a look that was hardly human.

Each of the three witches greeted Macbeth in turn, calling him Thane of Glamis, Thane of Cawdor, and King of Scotland. Macbeth stood as though in a dream, greatly astonished at what he heard.

Then Banquo asked the witches if indeed they could look into- the future and say something to him as well. To him the witches prophesied that he would be

‘Lesser than Macbeth and greater,
Not so happy, yet much happier.’

They told him that his sons would be kings, though he was none.

While the two generals stood wondering what these dark prophecies could mean, messengers came from King Duncan to tell Macbeth that he had been made Thane of Cawdor. This was an exact fulfilment of one prophecy. Now Macbeth began to think that the witches might also have been correct on the other points, and that he might really **rule over Scotland some day**.

Macbeth had a bad and ambitious wife. When he told her what the witches had promised him, she decided that he should become great at any cost, even at the cost of Duncan's life.

King Duncan had a **habit** of visiting his noblemen. This time he chose to stay in Macbeth's **castle**. He brought with him his sons Malcolm and Donalbain, and a great many **guests**.

When Macbeth told his wife about the King's visit, she immediately began to talk about her dark and **evil purpose**.

The King was extremely tired after his long journey. He was **glad to go to bed**. He had two servants sleeping in his room, but Lady Macbeth had given them so much wine that they fell fast asleep and did not hear anything. Lady Macbeth had got her husband to agree to her evil plan. Yet she feared that his nature was not hard and cruel enough **to murder** a sleeping man. So, with a dagger in her hand, she herself **approached** the calmly sleeping King. As she looked at Duncan's face, something in its expression made the mad woman **think of her own father**, and **her courage** failed her. But her husband overcame his own fear, and entering the King's room, he quickly killed him.

The next moment terrible fear seized him. One of the servants moved in his sleep. It seemed to Macbeth as if a voice cried from somewhere, "Sleep no more! Macbeth does murder sleep!"

Returning to his wife, the murderer told her of those imaginations. She only **laughed at his weakness**, and told him to wash the blood from his hands. Then she took the **blood-stained** dagger and passed it across the cheeks of the still sleeping servants, so that they might be suspected of having murdered the King.

When morning came, Macbeth and his wife pretended that they were extremely sad. Yet the guests seemed suspicious of them. The sons of Duncan fled at once – the elder one to England, the younger one to Ireland. Macbeth became King and the prophecy of the witches was **fulfilled**.

Still, the memory of the bloody murder troubled Macbeth day and night. He could not forget that the three witches had prophesied that Banquo's children, not his own, would be kings after him. Both he and his Queen **decided on another murder**, the murder of Banquo and his son.

For this purpose they gave a big party, inviting all the chief lords and, of course, the two intended victims. They were to be attacked and killed on **their way to the King's palace**. Banquo was murdered, but his son escaped. While Macbeth was saying how sorry he was that his dear friend had not come yet, a figure entered and sat down in his seat, the only empty one at the table.

One of the guests asked Macbeth to sit down at the table. But he stood looking in great horror at his seat which seemed the others nothing but an empty chair.

He **trembled and grew pale**, for he saw sitting there the blood stained figure of the murdered Banquo.

“Thou canst say I did it, never **shake** the bloody lock, at me!” he cried in horror.

“Gentlemen, rise. His Highness is not well,” said the Thane of Ross.

But Lady Macbeth tried to calm the astonished guests, telling them that it was only a fit of illness that would pass in a moment. Macbeth had often suffered from them in his youth. She tried to wake her husband from his fit of terror, but Macbeth watched the figure which only he alone was able to see, with staring eyes. When, for a short moment, the figure disappeared, he tried to speak cheerfully. Calling for wine, he drank to the health of all those present.

“And to our dear friend Banquo, whom we miss,” he added bravely. “To all, and to him, we drink!”

The words were hardly out of his mouth when once more the figure of the murdered man rose before Macbeth. With a scream of terror he again drew back. Lady Macbeth felt that it was not easy to explain her husband’s strange behaviour. She quickly sent the guests away, saying that Macbeth was really ill.

After that Macbeth felt so unhappy that he decided to find the three witches, and ask them to tell him what would happen in the future.

The first of the witches told him to fear Macduff, Thane of Fife. The second evil spirit appeared in the form of a child stained with blood and **advised** Macbeth to fear no one. The third witch said that Macbeth would not be defeated until

“Great Birnam wood to high Dunsinane hill. Shall come against him.”

When Macbeth reached home, there was bad news for him. An army was being raised against him by Malcolm, and Macduff, Thane of Fife, had gone to England to join it. Upon this, Macbeth attacked the castle in which Lady Macduff and her children were living, and killed them and all their relatives. This murder turned the hearts of the noblemen against their King. Many went over to **join Malcolm**.

In the troubles that now gathered thick and fast around, Macbeth, he no longer had the **advice** of his evil wife to support him. Lady Macbeth **had fallen seriously ill** and the doctors could not explain the cause of her illness. She would rise in her sleep, and speak strange words, and **act in a very strange way**. The doctors decided to watch her secretly to see what would happen. For two nights all was quiet. But on the third night Lady Macbeth entered her room, put down the candle she was carrying, and began to rub her hands, as if she were washing them, speaking **in a low voice**.

“**Here’s the smell** of blood still,” she muttered, as if her heart were breaking.

The memory of the murder was **too much for her** and at last **she died by her own hand**.

Macbeth was now alone in the world, with no one to share his troubles. Life seemed so hateful that he did not care how soon it would be over.

When he heard that Malcolm was coming **at the head of** a powerful army, he shut himself up in his castle and waited. A messenger came to him there one day, declaring that the wood of Birnam had begun to move. Macbeth remembered what the witches had told him and he was filled with great fear.

A heavy battle followed, and soon Macbeth was defeated and overcome. His head was cut off and taken to young Malcolm, who now became King.

1. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро диҳед.

Take, be, give, show, get, think, let, go, grow, do, know, buy, have, respect, fight, lose, win, lead, stop, stand, hear, say, add, beg, tell, mean, come, begin, decide, choose, stay, bring, sleep, keep, fall, make, seize, cry, flee, forget, sit, find, meet, see, put, rub, break, shut, cut.

2. Translate the words in bold type into Tajik or Russian. Переведите выделенные слова на таджикский или русский язык. Калимаҳои ҷиҳдашударо ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. **Courage** is great braveness. People who have **courage** are afraid of nothing, they are very brave. He hadn’t the **courage** to refuse. He was not brave enough to refuse.

2. We shall invite Ann **as well**. We shall invite Ann too. Eric speaks English and Tajik as well. He speaks English and Tajik too.

3. A **habit** is somebody's usual way of acting, especially something that cannot be changed easily. Smoking is a bad **habit**, it is harmful to health. Peter has the **habit** of going to bed late. Peter usually goes to bed late.

4. A **castle** is a large building or a group of buildings meant for defence against an enemy's attack. The **castle** of Hissar is situated in Hissar Region. An English proverb says "My home is my **castle**."

5. A **guest** is a person staying at or paying a visit to another's house. We are expecting **guests** to dinner. They gave a party, inviting all the village people to be their **guests**. King Duncan brought with him a great many guests.

6. **Evil** means very bad and cruel. Lady Macbeth was an evil woman. She wanted to harm people. Evil-minded people have evil thoughts. **An evil** eye is supposed to bring harm by a look

7. A **purpose** is an aim, plan or an intention. For what **purpose** do you want to go to Leningrad? Why do you want Leningrad? Lady Macbeth told her husband about her evil **purpose**.

8. To **murder** means to kill somebody unlawfully and intention ally Macbeth and his queen **murdered** linking. They killed the king. Nobody knew how the **murderers** had escaped. Nobody knew how those who had killed the man had escaped.

9. Approach means to come nearer. Autumn is approaching and the weather is becoming cooler. Lady Macbeth herself approached the calmly sleeping king.

10. To **stain** means to make dirty or coloured marks on something. The murderer's hands were **stained** with blood. A **stain** is a dirty mark. Look, there are coffee stains on your dress. Your dress is **stained** with coffee.

11. He **fulfilled** his promise. He kept his promise. Every man must **fulfil** his duty to his homeland. Every man must do his duty to his homeland.

12. A **victim** is a person or animal who is suffering because of some events or some evil person. He is the **victim** of his own carelessness. These unhappy men are all **victims** of the last war.

13. He **shook** his head. He moved his head from side to side to show that his answer was 'no'. The heavy storm **shook** the trees.

14. To **tremble** means to shake with fear or anger. Macbeth **trembled** with fear when he saw Banquo. The bridge **trembled** when heavy lorries crossed it. The bridge moved up and down.

15. To **stare** means to look with eyes wide open in anger, admiration surprise or terror. Macbeth **stared** in terror at the evil spirit. The child **stared** at the toys in the shop window.

16. To **advise** means to suggest an opinion. He **advised** us to take the bus. He suggested that we should take the bus. **Advice** is a suggestion. He gave us some good advice, lie made some good suggestions.

17. A **cause** is something that produces an effect, something that makes something happen. The **cause** of the fire was carelessness. The doctors could not explain the cause of Lady Macbeth's illness. What **caused** her early death? What **caused** this accident?

18. To **share** means to have or use something with others. Macbeth **shared** his troubles with his wife. He told her about all his troubles. I share my room with my sister. We both use the room, we live in it together.

3. Form opposites of the following adjectives and use them in sentences of your own. Найдите антонимы следующих прилагательных и используйте их в своих предложениях. Зидмаънои кали-маҳои зеринро созед ва онҳоро дар ҷумлаҳои худ истифода кунед.

Model: powerful – powerless suddenly he felt powerful and weak.

Valuable, hopeful, meaningful, thoughtful, lawful, colourful, doubtful, careful, useful, needful, painful, cheerful, helpful

4. At the Theatre – В театре – Дар театр

Ann – Where shall we take off our things?

Mike – This is the way to the cloakroom.

Ann – The house is full already. It is always full when they give this play.

Mike – The house has been sold out long in advance, there are no tickets at the box-office for today.

Ann – Did you have any trouble getting the tickets?

Mike – No, I picked them up at the entrance.

Ann – Where are our seats, in the balcony or in a box?

Mike – The usher will show us to our seats. I think they are the first and second from the aisle in the seventh row in the stalls. Let's go to the foyer.

Ann – No, there goes the last bell! We shan't be allowed to enter after it.

Mike – Here we are! The curtain is going up.

Ann – The sets are nicely done. Who is playing tonight?

Mike – I don't know, we didn't buy a program.

Ann – We shall do it during the interval.

5. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский или на таджикский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. They were stopped by the appearance of three strange figures. 2. A look that was hardly human. 3. Macbeth stood as though in a dream. 4. His sons would be kings, though he was none. 5. ... the witches might have been correct on the other points. 6. She decided that he should become great at any cost. 7. He chose to stay in Macbeth's castle. 8. He was glad to go to bed. 9. They fell fast asleep. 10. Its expression made the mad woman think of her own father. 11. Her courage failed her. 12. So that they might be suspected of having murdered the King. 13. The guests seemed suspicious of them. 14. Both Lie and his queen decided on another murder. 15. For this purpose they had a big party. 16. ... asked Macbeth to sit down at the table. 17. ... nothing but an empty chair. 18. His Highness is not well. 19. Lie drank to the health of all those present. 20. ... appeared in the form of a child stained with blood. 21. ... said that Macbeth would not be defeated. 22. In the troubles that now gathered thick and fast around Macbeth. 23. ... act in a very strange way. 24. As if she were washing them. 25. She died by her own hand. 26. ... alone in the world, with no one to share his troubles. 27. He shut himself up in his castle.

6. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

What was Macbeth? 2. Where were Macbeth and Banquo going? 3. Where did their way lead them? 4. What did the witches prophesy to both men? 5. When was one of the prophecies fulfilled? 6. Was Lady Macbeth a good person? 7. What was she ready to do to make her husband great? 8. What was one of King Duncan's habits? 9. What did Lady Macbeth begin to talk about when she heard of the King's visit? 10. Why was King Duncan glad to go to bed? 11. Did Macbeth agree to his wife's plan of murder? 12. Who approached the calmly sleeping King? 13. Why could Lady Macbeth not kill the King? 14. Could

Macbeth overcome his own fear? 15. Who were suspected of having murdered the King? 16. What did the real murderers pretend when morning came? 17. What became of the sons of the murdered King? 18. Who was the next victim of Lady Macbeth's evil plans? 19. What strange guest appeared at Macbeth's party? 20. What was the cause of Lady Macbeth's strange illness? 21. Why did she kill herself? 22. Who became King after Macbeth? 23. What other famous tragedies by Shakespeare do you know?

7. Who said it? When? Why? Кто это сказал? Когда? Почему? Киинро гуфд? Кай? Барои чӣ?

1. Macbeth does murder sleep! 2. Here's the smell of blood I still. 3. His Highness is not well. 4. Never shake the bloody locks at me! 5. Lesser than Macbeth and greater, Not so happy, yet much happier.

8. Fill in prepositions where necessary. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги, где это необходимо. Дар ҷойҳои зарури пешояндҳои мувофиқро гузоред.

1. The usher will show us ... our seats. 2. Macbeth ... another courageous general, was returning... the battle field. 3. Lie was greatly surprised ... what he heard. 4. The murderer told his wife ... those imaginations. 5. Macbeth had often suffered. .. such momentary fits ... illness ... his youth. 6. He called... wine and drank ... the health ... all those present. 7. When Macbeth reached ... home, he was told ... his wife's strange illness. 8. She acted ... a very strange manner. 9. ... the third night Lady Macbeth entered ... the room and began speaking ... a low voice. 10. She rubbed and rubbed her hands, but it was ... no use. 11. Malcolm was coming ... the head ... a powerful army. 12. Macbeth's head was cut off and presented ... young Malcolm. 13. Macbeth had no one to share his troubles ... 14. He immediately gave his consent ... her murderous plan. 15. The evil spirits may have been correct ... the other points, too.

9. Topics for Conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯҳои барои мусоҳиба.

1. Preparations for a visit to the theatre.
2. What does a theatre programme include?
3. Which do you prefer, the theatre or the cinema?

4. Characterise Shakespeare's plays.
5. What kind of plays do you prefer? Why?
6. Name some modern Soviet playwrights and their works.

10. Make up dialogues between.

A) Macbeth and his wife after Macbeth has returned from the battlefield.

Б) Macbeth and his wife after Duncan's murder,

В) Macbeth and the doctor discussing Lady Macbeth's illness.

Придумайте диалоги между:

A) Макбетом и его женой после того, как он возвратится с поля боя.

Б) Макбетом и его женой после убийством Дункана.

В) Макбетом и доктором, когда они обсуждают болезнь Леди Макбет.

Муколама тартиб дихед.

A) дар байни Макбет ва завчааш баъди оне, ки вай аз майдони ҷанг бармегардад.

Б) дар байни Макбет ва завчааш баъди куштори Дункан

В) дар байни Макбет ва духтур (бемории Хонум Макбетро муҳокима мекунанд).

Proverbs

1. All covet, all lose.
2. A clean hand wants no washing.
3. False friends are worse than open enemies.
4. As you sow you shall mow.

11. Quotations from Shakespeare. Цитаты из произведений Шекспира. Иқтибосот аз Шекспир.

1. The nature of bad news infects the teller. 2. Think good thoughts, write good words. 3. Beauty makes idiots sad and wise men merry. 4. The fool doth think he is wise, but the wise knows himself to be a fool. 5. Men of few words are the best men. 6. What's done can't be undone. 7. False face must hide what the false heart doth know. 8. Love looks not with the eyes, but with the mind. 9. Better a witty fool than a foolish wit.

Shakespeare laid the scenes of his plays in Africa, in Asia Minor and in many parts of Europe, yet he had never left England.

A classic is something that everybody wants to have read and nobody wants to read. (Mark Twain)

Jokes

Policeman: (to the only witness of the car accident) What's your, name?

Witness: John Smith.

Policeman: Give us your real name!

Witness: Well, put me down as William Shakespeare.

Policeman: That's better. You can't fool me with that Smith stuff.

A foreigner was visiting New York. Walking along a side- street late one evening, he was stopped by a bandit.

"Give me your money, or I'll blow out your brains!"

"Blow away," said the foreigner. "You can live in New York without brains, but not without money."

Read with Dictionary

William Shakespeare

(1564 – 1616)

The last half of the 16th and the beginning of the 17th centuries are known as the golden age of English literature. It was the time of the English Renaissance, and sometimes it is even called 'the age of Shakespeare'.

By that time England had become a powerful state. English trade was flourishing. New branches of science were developing. At the same time there was no change for the better in the life of the English people, and the power of gold grew stronger.

Shakespeare saw these contradictions and reflected them in his works.

William Shakespeare, the greatest and most famous of English writers, and probably the greatest playwright who has ever lived, was born in the town of Stratford-on-Avon, Warwickshire.

In spite of his fame we know very little about his life. William lived in Stratford until he was about twenty-one. Then he went to London. We do not know why he left his home town.

In London, Shakespeare became an actor and a member of one of the chief acting companies. Soon he began to write plays for this company and in a few years he became a well-known author.

The theatre at that time was more closely connected with the people than any other art. All kinds of Londoners went to the theatre and were very fond of it.

Shakespeare wrote 37 plays. Among them there are deep tragedies, such as “Hamlet”, “King Lear”, “Othello”, “Macbeth”; light comedies such as “The Merry Wives of Windsor”, “All’s Well That Ends Well”, “Twelfth Night”, “Much Ado About Nothing”; historical dramas, such as “Henry IV”, “Richard III”, and many others.

Most of Shakespeare’s plays were not published in his lifetime. So some of them may have been lost in the fire when the’ Globe theatre burned down in 1613.

Shakespeare spent the last years of his life at Stratford where he died in 1616. A monument was put up to the memory of the great playwright in the Poets’ Corner in Westminster Abbey.

Shakespeare was a great humanist. His belief in man was the source of his optimism which we can feel in even his blackest tragedies. He was a great writer. He wrote widely different plays and scenes actually well. He could write wonderfully funny scenes and scenes of fear and excitement. The characters in his plays do not seem like ‘characters in a book’, but seem to be real people whom we could recognize at once if we met them in ordinary life instead of in a play.

Pushkin and the Russian revolutionary democrats highly appreciated Shakespeare as one of the greatest poets of the world. Soviet actors have found in Shakespeare the unity of a tragic search for truth and inner optimism based on his great faith in the final victory of man; and they have reflected it in their acting on the stage.

12. Complete the sentences. Завершите предложения. Цумлаҳоро пурра кунед.

• In English literature the last half of the 16th and the beginning of the 17th centuries are known as ...

• William Shakespeare was born....

• He went to London when he ...

• In London he became ...

• First he began to write plays for....

• Among his 37 plays there are ...

• The Globe Theatre where Shakespeare worked burnt down in...

• The characters of Shakespeare’s plays are like ...

• Pushkin highly appreciated Shakespeare as ...

• There is a monument to Shakespeare in ...

LESSON 12.

Competence: The pupils must learn by heart the given new words, use them in their speech and make an interrogative form of sentences with the following words.

Компетенция: Ученик должен уметь читать переводить, пересказывать текст и использовать следующие слова в речи.

Салоҳият: Хонанда бояд матнро хонда, тарҷума, нақл аз рӯйи матн ва муколамаҳои тартибодаро дар нутқ истифода карда та-вонад.

carry out [ˈkæri ˈaʊt]

rapid [ˈræpid]

own [aʊn]

relation [rɪˈleɪʃ(ə)n]

maintain [meɪnˈteɪn]

route [ru:t]

prefer [prɪˈfɜ:]

establish [ɪsˈtæblɪʃ]

task[tɑ:sk]

supply [səˈplaɪ]

cargo [ˈkɑ:gəʊ]

investigate [ɪnˈvestɪɡeɪt]

equip [ɪˈkwɪp]

local [ləʊk(ə)l]

force [fɔ:s]

succeed [səkˈsi:d]

in spite of [spaɪt]

native [ˈneɪtɪv]

LADDER INTO THE UNIVERSE

Space was something far and out of man's reach till October 1957, when a man-made satellite was successfully put into orbit. Later on man himself went up into space. Here is what Yuri Gagarin wrote about future space travel.

The launching of the first man-made Earth satellite on October 4, 1957, marked the beginning of the cosmic era. Some three and a half years later man himself set out on the road to the stars.

I would like to tell you about my dreams in this field of human activities which is my profession, a profession that is still somewhat unusual.

Could I ever forget the sight of that unbelievably generous bluish-white Sun – the source of life on Earth – I watched in outer space. So far, few have seen it that away, but I am sure that some time in the future hundreds of people living on Earth will see it. They will be people of different professions coming from different countries, who will try to solve the mysteries of the Universe to serve mankind.

The road to the stars will be no easy one. I can clearly see what strength, effort and talent will be demanded of astronauts and engineers to put man on the Moon.

As Earth satellites go further into outer space, we learn more and more about the Universe. Finally, we shall establish direct contact with the Moon. We shall bring to the Moon everything needed for human life. I think that there will be several lunar travellers at once, as only a well-trained team will be able to perform the task of exploring this heavenly body, which in the day- time heats up to 120 degrees Centigrade, and at night cools to 150 degrees Centigrade.

A great many novels have been written about what man might expect on Venus and they all differ from one another. According to Tsiolkovsky, man, with time, will explore all of the cosmos. I think that even with our present tempo of scientific and technological progress, this is a task that will take several generations to accomplish.

If progressive mankind unites its efforts, I believe it will be possible for us to build the first few steps of the cosmic ladder and perhaps even get as far as Mars. Such co-operation in space research would also be of great use for weather control.

Possibly some people will say that I am too cautious, those who believe that in another 15 years or so thousands of tourists will be going to Mercury and Pluto, let alone the Moon, Venus and Mars. Now I am sure that this will happen, but not so soon. Meanwhile man is preparing for flights first to the Moon and then to Venus. I wish I could soon shake hands there with astronauts from different countries...

1. Give the three forms of the following verbs. Приведите три формы следующих глаголов. Се шакли феълҳои зеринро нависед.

find, lead, be, become, bring, take, set out, stop, make, leave, know, sail, build, help, lie, run, lay, strike, throw, save, meet, buy, lose, break, hear, put, let.

2. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
add	addition	navigate	navigation
continue	continuation	prepare	preparation
decide	decision	separate	separation
destroy	destruction		
investigate	investigation		

3. Form nouns from the following verbs and give their meanings into Tajik or Russian. Образуйте существительные из следующих глаголов и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Аз феълҳои зерин исмҳо сохта, маънии онҳоро ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ шарҳ диҳед.

Model: employ – employment.

equip, establish, develop, govern, arrange, astonish, move,, manage, achieve, enjoy.

4. Each of the following words can be used as both a noun and a verb. Give' their meanings. Каждое из следующих слов может быть использовано как существительное и глагол. Объясните их значение. Ҳар яке аз калимаҳои зерин метавонад ҳам ба маънои исм ва ҳам феъл истифода бурда шавад. Маъниҳои онро шарҳ диҳед.

branch, captain, chart, find, force, group, head, help, hope, look, map, name, order, plan, plant, reach, repair, rest, return, sail, ship, stop, storm, study, supply, trade, value, work, wreck.

5. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

Nouns: artist, naturalist, scientist, specialist

Adjectives: artistic, natural, scientific, special

Nouns: coast, difficulty, distance, geography

Adjectives: coastal, difficult, distant, geographical

Nouns: east, north, south, west

Adjectives: eastern, northern, southern, western

6. Translate into Tajik or Russia the words in bold type. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык выделение слова. Калимаҳои ҷорӣ ҷаҳдашударо ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. To **carry out** means to perform or to fulfil. The factory **carried out** its plan. The factory fulfilled its plan. The scientists **carried out** important experiments. The scientists made important experiments.

2. **Rapid** means quick. Science has been developing **rapidly** (= fast) in the 20th century. We stopped on the bank of a **rapid** mountain stream.

3. To **own** means to 'have'. In the 19th century Russia owned Alaska and the northwestern coast of America. Alaska and the northwestern coast of America belonged to Russia in the past.

4. **Relations** are dealings or affairs of one person or country with another. Wants to have friendly **relations** with all countries.

5. To **maintain** means to keep up or continue. It was difficult to **maintain** trade relations with distant parts of the world.

6. A **route** is a way taken or planned from one place to another. We came back by another **route**. The aim of the expedition was to find a new sea **route** to the Far East.

7. To **prefer** means to like better. Some people **prefer** tea or coffee. Some people like tea more than coffee. For them tea is **preferable**.

8. To **establish** means to found or start something. Tajikistan has **established** business relations with a number of Foreign countries. .

9. A **task** is a duty or a piece of work one has to do. A teacher's **task** is to teach children. The **explorers** performed different tasks.

10. To **supply** means to give something that is needed or asked for. This factory **supplies** the whole with dairy products. In winter it was difficult to ship supplies to the settlements on the islands.

11. The **cargo** of the ship is oil. The ship carries oil. A **cargo** is the goods carried in a ship.

12. To **investigate** means to examine or study scientifically. The expedition carried out scientific investigations. The results of the investigation were published in a book.

13. To **equip** means to supply a person, a ship, etc. with what is needed for a purpose. The ship was well **equipped** for the voyage. The factory they built here has modern **equipment**.

14. **Local** people are the people who live in a certain town or village. A **local** man showed us the way through the woods. While the ship was being repaired, the scientists investigated the **local plants** and animals.

15. To **force** means to make somebody do something. A heavy storm **forced** the ship to stop at an island. The cold weather **forced** the explorers to turn back.

16. They went out **in spite of** the rain. Though it was raining they still went out; the rain could not keep them from going out.

17. To **succeed** means to manage to do something. The explorers didn't succeed in finding gold. They failed to find it. The crew **succeeded** in saving the ship. They managed to save the ship.

18. **Native** means 'connected with one's place of birth'. Our **native** language is Tajik. **Natives** are also the non-European people of a non-European country. The **natives** of some islands were friendly to the explorers.

7. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони англисӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. The idea had been prepared by the rapid development of Tajik industries. 2. Maintaining contact with this region was difficult. 3. Find a sea route leading to the colonies. 4. Opens up opportunities for establishing trade relations with other countries. 5. The staff included outstanding specialists in different branches of natural science. 6. It was to ship supplies to the settlements. 7. The expedition was also to carry out a number of scientific investigations. 8. One of the most important tasks being the mapping of certain parts of the Pacific coast... 9. More supplies and equipment were taken on board. 10. The ships were forced to stop at an island to repair some broken masters. 11. Having unloaded his cargo and repaired his sails, Krusenstain left for Japan. 12. Krusenstain did not succeed in finding the mouth of the Amur. 13. He was to help the governor of the colony to rebuild the fort. 14. In Chinese waters the ship ran into storm. 15. The crew succeeded in saving the ship. 16. Part of the cargo had to be thrown overboard. 17. They traded the furs they had bought from the north. 18. The ships lost sight of each other. 19. He became the first seaman to make a non-stop voyage from China to England. 20. These voyages were of great scientific; value.

8. Topics for conversation. Темы для беседы. Мавзӯӣ барои мусоҳиба.

1. Do you prefer to travel- by plane, train, bus or car? Give your reasons. 2. How do you usually spend the time on a train journey? 3. Have you ever made a trip on a lake, river or the sea? 4. Explain why a certain town or district in your country attracts tourists and holidaymakers. 5. A friend asks your advice about walking holiday (touring by bus). Make at least four suggestions. 6. You have five hours to spend in an unknown large city. What do you do? 7. Why are so many people interested in old places? 8. Do you like travel books? Tell about one that you liked. 9. Have you seen films about discoveries or trips to distant lands? Tell about them.

9. Find the correct endings for the words. Translate them into Tajik language. Найдите правильные окончания для данных слов. Ба калимаҳои зерин охирчаспаҳои мувофиқро ёбед.

headmast..., offi..., produ ..., paint..., advi..., typ...,

pil ..., conduc ..., lead ..., photogr..., dressmak ..., manag ..., art ..., cosmo...

Proverbs

Well begun is half done.
Hasty climbers have sudden falls.
East or west, home is best.
Home is where the heart is.

A Limerick

A rocket explorer named Wright
Once travelled much faster than light,
He set out one day in a relative way,
And returned on the previous night.

“Which One?”

Two explorers were trudging through a swamp in the jungle.
Suddenly one shouted out, “Hey, an alligator has just bitten my leg.”

“Which one?” shouted the other, rushing forward to give first aid.

“How should I know?” shouted the other. “All these alligators look alike to me.”

rocket [ˈrɒkɪt] – мушак; ракета

relative [ˈrelatɪv] – хешу табор; родственник; родственница

swamp [swɒmp] – ботлоқ; болото

Wright [rɪt] – Райт

alligator [ˈælɪɡeɪtə] – тимсох; аллигатор – крокодил

jungle [ˈdʒʌŋɡl] – чангал; лес; джунгли

first aid [ˈfɜːstˈeɪd] – ёрии аввалин; первая помощь

previous [ˈpriːviəs] – гузашта; предыдущий

10. Read and translate the following words. Прочитайте и переведите следующие слова. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва тарҷума кунед.

geographical [dʒɪəˈgræfɪk(ə)l]	observation [ˌɒbzəˈveɪʃ(ə)n]
expedition [ˌnævɪˈdeɪʃ(ə)n]	mast [mɑːst]
navigation [ˌnævɪˈgeɪʃ(ə)n]	naturalist [ˈnætʃ(ə)r(ə)lɪst]
contact [ˈkɒntækt]	Japanese [ˌdʒæp(ə)ˈniːz]
region [ˈriːdʒ(ə)n]	European [ˌjuərəˈpiːən]
colony [ˈkɒləni]	continent [ˈkɒntɪnənt]

commander [kə'mɑ:ndə]	Chinese ['ʃaɪ'nɪ:z]
specialist ['speʃ(ə)lɪst]	China ['ʃaɪnə]
settlement ['setlmənt]	seaman ['si:mən]
to map [mæp]	

11. Read the following words and translate them into Tajik or Russian. Прочитайте следующие слова и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. Калимаҳои зеринро хонед ва ба забонҳои тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

universe ['ju:nɪvɜ:s]	unite [ju:'naɪt]
satellite ['sæt(ə)laɪt]	Mars [mɑ:z]
orbit ['ɔ:bit]	Mercury ['mɜ:kj(ə)rɪ, 'mɜ:kjʊrɪ]
generation [,dʒenə'reɪʃ(ə)n]	Pluto ['plu:təu]
cooperation [kəu,ɒpə'reɪʃ(ə)n]	Venus ['vi:nəs]
cosmic ['kɒzmɪk]	contact ['kɒntækt]
talent ['tælənt]	cosmos ['kɒzmɒs]
astronaut ['æstrənɔ:t]	technological [,tekənɔ'lɒdʒɪk(əl)]
tempo ['tempəu]	progressive [prə'ɡresɪv]

12. Answer the following questions. Ответьте на следующие вопросы. Ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб диҳед.

1. When did man first go up into space? 2. Can you give the names of the three first cosmonauts and astronauts? 3. Speak about the first woman cosmonaut. 4. What do you know about the first joint space flight of Soviet and American space pilots? 5. How much of Gagarin's dream have come true already?

13. Find adjectives corresponding to the following nouns. Найдите прилагательные, соответствующие следующим существительным. Сифатҳои ба исмҳои зерин мувофиқро ёбед.

cosmos, success, activity, difference, strength, heat, science, technology, progress, earth, electricity, power, industry, biology, number, coast, man, kind.

Easy Reading.

The Missing Robot

Some time ago I read a science fiction story about a missing robot. It had hidden itself among fifty others so that it could not be found. The designer ordered all except the missing robot to step forward, but

all the robots moved. It was clear that one of them was lying. The designer did not know what to do. He gave them different orders and watched for a false move. The missing robot was too clever for him. He then questioned each one in turn but he was still unsuccessful. Then he made one last attempt. He called them together and spoke of an extra knob on the missing one's ears. Watching them carefully, he saw one robot secret raise its hand and feel its ear.

True / False. Правильно / Неправильно. Дуруст / Нодуруст.

- It was a science fiction story about a missing robot.
- There were fifty robots standing in a line.
- The designer ordered all robots to step forward.
- He gave the robots different orders but still he could not find the missing one.
- There was an extra knob on the missing robot's ear.
- The robot that secretly felt its ear was the missing one.

14. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский или таджикский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

genius	invaluable
universally	atomic
theory	thermodynamics
electronic	physicist
diamagnetism	academy

15. Read the text and find answers to the following questions. Прочитайте текст и найдите ответы на следующие вопросы. Матрохонед ва ба саволҳои зерин ҷавоб гардонед.

1. Why has Lev Landau often been called 'the Pushkin of physics'?
2. Name some contributions Landau has made to science?
3. What prizes was he awarded?
4. Do you know where Landau is buried?

Read with a dictionary

Lev Landau

Lev Landau has often been called 'the Pushkin of physics'. He was a genius in the fullest sense of the word. He was 24 when he developed the universally recognized 'theory of electronic diamagnetism' which was later on given his name. Landau's range of interest in science was

extremely wide, and he made an invaluable contribution to every area he touched. He developed solid state physics, the theory of atomic collisions, thermodynamics and low temperature physics.

For his valuable research Landau was awarded the Prize and the Nobel Prize, the highest scientific awards in the world. He was a Hero of Socialist Labour and honorary member of many foreign academies and scientific societies. Physicists in many countries today study physics from the textbook that Landau and Lifshits wrote – it has been published in dozens of languages. Physicists often call this many-volume textbook “The Book”

Revision IV

In this half-term you have learnt the following words. В этом полугодии вы выучили следующие слова. Дар ин нимсола шумо калима зеринро омӯхтед.

1. Nouns	2. Verbs	3. Adjectives	4. Adverbs	5. Prepositions
lesson 10 astonishment chalk congratulations envelope medicine oil painter relative sheet terror (painting) lesson 11 (advice) castle courage guest habit (murder) purpose victim 16 (19)	lesson 10 accept connect declare interfere (paint) lesson 11 advise approach cause fulfil tremble murder shake share stain stare 14 (15)	lesson 10 cheerful sharp necessary lesson 11 evil lesson 12 local, preferable- rapid 4 (7)	lesson 11 rather lesson 12 As well 1 (2)	lesson 10 For the sake of lesson 12 In spite of 1 (2)

lesson 12 cargo equipment investigation native relations route supply task 24 (27)	lesson 12 carry out establish force maintain own (prefer) 'succeed (20) 22			
			Summing up Nouns Verbs Adjectives Adverbs Prepositions 36	16 (19) 24 (27) 14 (15) 20 (22) 4(7) 1(2) 1(2) 40/55 (60)

1. Find one unsuitable word in each line. Найдите одно лишнее слово в каждой строке. Дар ҳар як қатор яктои калимаи номуву-фикро ёбед.

- evil, murder, pain, courage, death
- sunflower, valley, lashes, body, ugly
- arrange, advise, altogether, quarrel, sweep
- splendid, evidently, fresh, straight, even
- according to, instead of, in front of, ought to, in spite of
- detailed, surprised, interested, -worried, interesting
- cook, good, shoots, took, foot
- arrive, return, land, leave, come in
- buy, tie, high, ski, sky
- equipment, development, government, different, establishment

2. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский или на таджикский язык. Ба забони тоҷикӣ ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

- To my great astonishment he did not try to interfere in my affairs at all.
- His relatives advised him to build another castle on the neighbouring hill.
- Modern furniture is simpler in design and cheaper in price.
- One of the guests declared that she was too astonished to learn that the handsome young man was connected with some doubtful business.
- Finally we succeeded it crossing the extremely rapid stream.
- The murderer must found at any cost.
- For this purpose he gave a

party and invited all the local people to be his guests. 8. They could not continue their journey along that route and had to return. 9. When the servants had fallen fast asleep, he hurriedly left the castle and made for the nearest village. 10. You ought to pronounce this word in exactly the same way as I do.

3. Put in suitable prepositions or adverbs where necessary. Вставьте пропущенные предлоги или наречия, где это необходимо. Ба чой-хой лозима пешоянд ва ё зарфҳо гузored.

1. ... my great surprise my old uncle told me that he was going to take ... art and meant to go ... it seriously. 2. He looks very young ... a man ... seventy-six. 3. She took such as great interest ... painting that it made her forget ... everything else. 4. The boy was ashamed ... his poor drawing, but his friend's was ... a different opinion. 5. Dick had a habit ... counting the cars he met ... his way ... school. 6. The guests drank ... the health ... my father and mother. 7. ... the third night we got some information ... what had happened ... our friends. 8. The man walked ... a strange way as though ... a dream. 9. We must finish our work ... any cost. 10. Russians made ... their first round-the-world voyage ... the beginning ... the 19th century. 11. All ... all the voyage lasted ... three years. 12. ... the ships lost sight ... each other ... a storm, one ... they sailed ... England and the other stopped ... the island ... St. Helena. ... the 20th ... March, ... 1820, the ship set sail ... China, 14. The idea ... establishing trade relations ... eastern countries was supported ... all the members ... the government. 15. We succeeded ... finding the crew ... the wrecked ship ... a boat ... the Brazilian coast.

GENERAL REVISION

1. Put the words in the brackets in their correct places Составьте слова вместо многотоний, в скобках, приведенные мест. Калимаҳои дар қавс бударо дар ҷойҳои лозима гузored.

1. Green valleys and beautiful lakes ... the tourists in ... (Switzerland, impressed). 2. All the boys ... John ... their team leader (as, accepted). 3. About midnight ... dropped in for a short ... visit (unexpected, some relatives). 4. They sat ... the window, talking ... low voices (in, beside). 5. We were all enthusiastic ... that exciting film that was ... at our cinema ... week (on, last, about). 6. That boy is very ..., he'll be ... in everything (successful, efficient).

2. Choose the correct word from the brackets. Вместо многотоний вставьте слова, приведенные в скобках. Калимаи мувофики дар кавсбударо интихоб кунед.

1. Playing with fire will result in ... fingers (burned, im-pressed).
2. Our new school is ... of red brick (painted, constructed). 3. I ... recognized my friend at the meeting (evidently, immediately). 4. Good ... is an important factor in space exploration (appearance, health). 5. Neither of the paintings was ... for the exhibition (suspected, accepted).
6. Both the football teams were ... tired (attentively, extremely). 7. This ... the sunset was extremely beautiful (morning, evening). 8. Dairy-cattle are grown for ... (meat, milk). 9. At week-ends he works in his garden ... up land for new flower-beds (spreading, digging). 10. There was nobody in the barn, all the prisoners had ... been taken to the forest (early, probably)

3. Complete the following. Завершите следующие предложения. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед. (Аналогия)

1. Child is to children as tooth is to ... 2. A is to Z as first is to ...
3. Think is to ... as sing is to song. 4. Sunrise is to ... as morning is to evening. 5. Woman is to wife as man is to ... 6. Own is to ... as work is to worker. 7. Alive is to dead as merry is to ... 8. Crowd is to crowded as detail is to ...

4. Are these countries near to or far from each other? Эти страны близки или далеки друг от друга? Ин мамлакатҳо ба ҳамдигар наздик ҳастанд ё дур?

the USA – Australia

Finland – Sweden

Italy – Greece

England – Canada

the Russia – Japan

Spain – New Zealand

5. What is the capital of Tajikistan France, Italy, Sweden, Finland, USA, Canada, Australia, Japan, Great Britain, New Zealand, Spain, Greece? – Какой город является столицей Таджикистана Франция, Италии, Швеции, Финляндии, США? Канады, Австралии, Японии, Великобритании, Новой Зеландии, Испании, Греции? – Пойтахти Тоҷикистон кадом шаҳр аст? Франсия, Япония, Швейцария, Финландия, ИМА, Канада, Австралия, Британияи Кабир, Зеландияи Нав, Испания, Гречия?

What language is spoken in the above-mentioned countries? - На каком языке говорят в вышеупомянутых странах? – Дар мамлакатҳои ишорагардида бо кадом забон гап мезананд?

6. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Переведите на русский или таджикский язык. Ба забонҳои русӣ ва ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед.

1. You don't like it. Neither do I. 2. I want you to sew me a belt like this. 3. He had worked on it for a number of years. 4. He made his way to the partisans. 5. His clothes gradually turned to rags. 6. He changed his shoes for sandals. 7. His heart troubled him. 8. When he came to himself, he was lying with his head in the water. 9. I'm in a bad way. 10. The fascists were keeping a watch on her. 11. All he had to do was to leave at the first sign of danger. 12. He threw into the corner everything that was at hand. 13. At this point he pulled himself together and began to listen. 14. It was there that we found him.

7. In each of these lines of five words one word does not fit in suitably with the other four. Find the word. Найдите в каждой из этих строк лишнее слово. Дар ҳар як қатор панҷтоғӣ калима мавҷуд аст, яке аз онҳо ба дигаронаш мувофиқ намеояд. Он калимаро ёбед.

1. sister, mother, aunt, uncle, daughter
2. good, fair, kind, harmful, helpful
3. safely, brightly, impress, completely, happily
4. tram, horse, car, train, trolley-bus
5. painter, teacher, writer, dressmaker, dentist
6. frog, monkey, lion, fox, horse
7. agreement, enjoyment, message, achievement, payment
8. discover, dislike, enjoy, disappear, disobey

8. Complete the following sentences. (Good and Bad). Дополните следующие предложения. (Good and Bad). Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед. (Good and Bad).

1. If you lose your way in a thick fog, it is no good ... 2. When you are in good health, there is no harm in ... 3. The map I bought is not much good because ... 4. It won't do you any harm to ... 5. He did not feel too good, so he ... 6. He has left home for good because ... 7. The doctor told the sick girl's parents to hope for the best, but ... 8. I had to agree that it had been a good while since ... 9. He will be sent to work in Tartu, but the worst of it is that ... 10. She did her best to ...

9. Group these words into families and translate them into Tajik or Russian. Use a dictionary if necessary. Сгруппируйте эти слова по значению и переведите их на таджикский или русский язык. При необходимости используйте словарь. Калимаҳои зеринро ба ғурӯҳҳо ҷудо карда, ба забони тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума кунед. Дар вақти лозимӣ аз луғатҳо истифода баред.

dead	friendliness	Active
lifeless	death	Anywhere
well-known	known	Live
playful	actor	Dangerously
dangerous	activity	Playtime
act	player	Any
unknown	living	Friendly
danger	playfully	Friend
anything	knowledge	Action
friendship	die	Anyone
activities	unfriendly	Know
anybody	life	Activist

10. Make nouns from the following verbs and use them in sentences your. Образуйте существительные из следующих глаголов и используйте их в своих предложениях. Аз феълҳои зерин исмҳо соzed ва дар ҷумлаҳои худ онҳоро истифода баред.

believe, express, act, employ, touch, think, support, and choose

11. Make adjectives from the following words. Образуйте прилагательные из следующих слов. Аз калимаҳои зерин сифатҳо соzed.

heat, hero, beauty, honour, truth, nature, value, hope, separate, east, west.

12. Complete the following sentences. Дополните следующие предложения. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

1. Ellsworth's declaration made Caswell think that ... 2. Their enthusiasm made us think that ... 3. That information made him believe that ... 4. Your message made me believe that ... 5. His courage made them suppose that ... 6. The girl's astonishment made the boy suppose that ...

1. If Mr Ellsworth had been poor, ... 2. If Mr Ellsworth had been seriously ill, ... 3. If Doctor Caswell had not been Mr Ellsworth's friend,

... 4. If Mr Ellsworth had not taken up art, 5. If Doctor Caswell's friend had not been head of an art school, ... 6. If Frank Swain had not been so poor, ... 7. If Mr Ellsworth had really forgotten about business, ... 8. If Mr Ellsworth had been gifted, ... 9. If he had not bought the Lathrop Gallery, ... 10. If Mr Ellsworth had not wanted to fool his friends and relatives, ...

13. What have these people achieved? Find the suitable explanation. Чего добились эти люди? Найдите подходящее объяснение. Ин одамон ба чӣ дастовардҳо ноил шуданд? Шарҳи мувофиқро ёбед.

1. John Glenn	the commander of the first
2. Valentina Tereshkova	Russian circumnavigation of the
3. Yuri Gagarin	world.
4. Yuri Lisyansky	the first navigator to make a
5. Neil Armstrong	nonstop voyage from China to
6. Fabian Gottlieb Belling-	England.
shausen	a navigator who made
7. Thomas Stafford	several voyages round the world.
8. Otto von Kotzebue	the discoverer of Antarctica,
9. Aleksei Leonov	the first Soviet Cosmonaut.
10. Adam Johann Krusenstern	the discoverer of America,
11. Christopher Columbus	the first American astronaut,
12. Bobojon Gafurov	the first woman-cosmonaut.
	the commander of the Soviet team
	in the first
	Hero of Tajikistan
	Soviet-American joint space
	flight,
	one of the first two astronauts
	who landed on the Moon,
	the commander of the American
	team in the first Soviet-American
	joint space flight.

14. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Перевидите на таджикский или русский язык. Ба забони русӣ ва ё тоҷикӣ тарҷума кунед

a) strong-minded weak-minded light-minded simple-minded practically-minded technically-minded	b) eatable apples drinkable water changeable weather usable instrument
c) white-haired black-haired blue-eyed long-legged bare-headed short-haired	d) dressmaker watchmaker shoemaker watchmaker holidaymaker

15. Give opposites of the following words. Подберите антонимы к следующим словам. Антонимҳои калимаҳои зеринро биёред.

1. late, cold, warm, open, new, evening, day, sit down, put on, in town, wise, sad, come here, sell, many, little, begin, all, happy, high, find, loser, success

2. wife, son, father, uncle, cheap, never, misunderstand, back, slow, down, nobody, black, small, oldest, at first, tomorrow, first, live, painless, outside, enemy.

16. Give synonyms of the following words. Подберите синонимы к следующим словам. Синонимҳои калимаҳои зеринро диҳед.

almost, set free, get home, perhaps, did not like, suppose, way, work, to notice, get ready, loudly, start, finish, cry, more than one or two, what are you called?, like, out of work

17. Form adjectives of the following words and find suitable nouns to go with them.

Model: blood – bloody – a bloody wound. Образуйте прилагательные из следующих слов и найдите подходящие существительные.

Модель: blood – bloody – a bloody wound. Аз калимаҳои зерин сифат созед ва ба онҳо исми мувофиқро ёбед. Намуна: blood – bloody – a bloody wound

fog, fur, hill, oil, rain, day, sun, fun, stone, storm, wind, cloud, dirt, milk, water, sugar, snow, stick, heart, rock, dream, sleep, hunger, anger.

18. Form nouns from the following verbs, using the ending -er, or -or.

Model: command – commander

Образуйте существительные из следующих глаголов, используя окончание -er или -or.

Модель: command – commander

Охирчаспакҳои -er, -or – ро истифода бурда, ва ё аз феълҳои зерин исмҳо созед.

Намуна: command – commander

discover, govern, lead, own, organize, sail, settle, trade, advise, employ, investigate, paint, collect, travel, train, play.

19. Translate into Tajik or Russian. Перевидите на русский или английский язык. Ба забонҳои тоҷикӣ ва ё русӣ тарҷума кунед.

• I carried a bag. The expedition was carried out by two ships. Important scientific investigations were carried out.

• I open the window. The discovery of America opened up a new period in the history of mankind. The voyage opened up opportunities for establishing trade relations with distant countries.

• We set the dishes on the table. The sun set at ten o'clock. We shall set up an English club at our school next year.

• Put the book on the shelf. The ship put out to sea. I put out the light and went to bed.

20. Complete the following sentences. Завершите следующие предложения. Ҷумлаҳои зеринро пурра кунед.

• Teach is to teacher as own is to ...

• True is to ... as die is to death.

• Help is to helpful as ... is to harmful.

• Govern is to government as excitement is to ...

• London is to ... as ... is to France.

• Strong is to weak as ... is to failure.

• Best is to good as ... is to bad.

• Sad is to sadly as calm is to ...

21. Turn in various expressions.

Translate the following phrases and complete the sentences. Перевидите в различные выражения.

Переведите следующие фразы и завершите предложения. Ди-гаргуншавӣ дар таассуротҳо. Ибораҳои зеринро тарҷума намуда, ҷумлаҳои пурра кунед.

• If you want to go the Post Office, you will have to turn to the right, and then ...

• His hair turned grey when ...

• He turned pale when he heard the sad news that...

• Clouds were gathering and so I turned back as...

• When you go out, don't forget to turn off...

• Go straight on for about a kilometer and then turn off

• On winter afternoons we turn on...

• If the weather turns fine,...

• That picture does not come next in my book. You must have turned over...

• When the teacher turned round suddenly, ...

• If you need help, turn to...

• Betty says it is her turn to clean the blackboard but...

• The car nearly overturned on the ice, but ...

22. Arrange the following words in rhyming pairs. Расположите следующие слова в рифмующихся парах. Калимаҳои зерин ҷуфт кунед.

• pound, flower, rule, repair, there, stuff, foot, read, how, here» now, said, put, enough, their, prepare, fool, hour, found, hear.

• private, ticket, bare, mine, could, crowd, raw, shoe, sure, poor, drive it, true, shore, good, loud, sign, bear, pick it.

• buy, broke, guard, heard, money, care, low, late, weather, eight, fly, oak, 'hard, bird, funny, hair, whether, though, mate, great.

23. Fill in the blanks. Complete the sentences with the right words. If necessary, use your dictionary. Вставьте пропущенные слова. При необходимости воспользуйтесь словарем. Ҷойҳои холиро пурра кунед. Ҷумлаҳои бо калимаҳои дуруст пурра кунед. Дар лаҳзаи лозима аз луғат истифода баред.

• Please ... your work for a few minutes.

I turned over another ... in my book.

(leaf, leaves, leave, least)

• What is the ... of this line?

I cannot tell you how ... it is.

(long, longer, length, line)

- Please give me a small ... of paper.
The two countries made ... when the war was over.
(peace, pace, pierce, piece)
- What is the ... of a new motor-bike in this shop?
That writer did not win any ... last year.
(prize, press, price, expensive)
- Is there any interesting ... in the paper this morning?
The child's ... was red with cold.
(now, news, nose, knows)
- I went out ... the weather was bad.
I went ... the forest quite alone.
A stone was ... into the water.
(throw, thrown, through, though)
- Is Riga ... away from us than Leningrad?
Is your ... an engineer?
(far, father, farther, further)
- Put your money into your pocket, or you may ... it.
This page in my book is ... and will fall out.
(lose, loose, loss, lost)
- There was no wind and the sea was quite...
It's neither cold nor warm, it's ...
(come, calm, cool, claim)
- Men were poorer in the ... than they are now.
We ... your father in the street five minutes ago. (past, passed, pass, passage)

24. What do you say. Что вы скажете... Чй меґед...

1. when you meet somebody in the morning?
2. you are introduced to somebody?
3. you step on somebody's foot?
4. you cannot hear what somebody is saying?
5. you thank somebody who has just helped you with something?
6. somebody thanks you for helping him?
7. you have been to a very nice party and are leaving now?
8. somebody has helped you to carry a heavy bag?
9. you need somebody to open the door for you?
10. you meet an old friend you haven't seen for a long time?

Final revision Revision of the Vocabulary
Here are all the words that you have learned during the year

1. Nouns	2. Verbs	3. Adjectives	4. Adverbs	Prepositions
1. Nouns admiration 4 (advice) 11 affair 7 appearance 2 artist 4 astonishment 10 audience 7 (author) 6 barn 8 belt 3 exhibitoin (6) 7 expression 4 barn 8 belt 3 (fine arts) 6 fool 3 freedom 4 glasses 1 guest habit 11 handkerchief 5 harm 9 health 2 hell 5 (investigation) 12 joy 5 (journalist) 6 lashes 9 (literature) 6 (magazine) 6 mankind 3 medicine 10 message 2 mind 1 moment 5 (murder) 11 musician 7 (native) 12 quarrel 9 occasion 7 oil 10 painter 10 (painting) 10 pair 8 patient 3 (playwright) 6 pleasure 9 point 4 power 4 price 7 purpose 11 (relations) 12 relative 10 (remark)	Verbs accept (6) 10 admire 4 advise 11 (appreciate) 6 approach 11 arrange 7 arrest 8 (carry out) 12 cause 11 connect 10 contain 3 (correspond) 6 count 8 deal 7 declare 10 determine 4 devote 7 disappear 2 display 7 (dream) 5 drop 2 exclaim 1 excuse 2 express 4 (establish) 12 face 8 faint 3 fix 5 (force) 12 fulfil 11 gain 5 (give up) 6 guide 2 guess 5 howl 5 impress 8 include 4 interfere 10 (maintain) 12 make up one's mind 9 manage 3 murder 11 mutter 1 (own) 12 (paint) 10 (prefer) 12 pronounce 9 recognize 8 remark 1 rub 5 separate 4	anxious 1 ashamed 9 awful 5 bright 9 (brilliant) 6 calm 4 capable 8 cheerful 10 comfortable 7 complete 3 cool 2 cruel 8 detailed 3 distant 7 doubtful 5 efficient 2 enthusiastic 5 even 9 evil II excellent 2 expensive 2 fair 9 firm 8 fond 4 foolish 5 gifted 4 good-looking ! handsome 9 heroic 3 honest 4 human 3 intelligent 8 (lively) 6 (local) 12 lovely 1 low 5 magnificent 7 necessary 10 outstanding 3 pale 2 pleased 1 (powerful) 6 (preferable) 12 proud 2 public 2 (rapid) 12 sad 1 safe 1 secret 2 sharp 10 (straight) 8 suspicious 5 ugly 9 valuable 3 (vivid) 6 wild	asleep 2 (as well) 12 attentively 8 anyway 5 evidently 2 extremely 4 forever 3 immediatel 1 maybe 1 meanwhile 5 probably 8 rather 10 straight 8	according to 7 beside 1 (including) 4 for the sake of (in spite of) 6,12 within 5

1 (representative) 6 research 3 restaurant 2 roof 2 (route) 12 rubbish 3 sheet 10 shot 8 sign 1 space 7 spirit 4 storm 5 strawberry 2. stream 3 struggle 4 suit 9	shake 11 share 11 stain 11 stare 11 (struggle) 4 (succeed) 12 suggest 5 suspect 3 sweep 9 threaten 3 touch 1	5 wise 1 (witty) 6 49 (58)		
sunflower 8 sunrise 3 sunset 2 (supply) 12 Switzerland 1 (task) 12 terror 10 thought 3 (title) 6 (triumph) 6 truck 8 truth 4 valley 9 victim I! wheel 9 (wonder) 9 84 (105)	tremble 11 turn 1 wonder 9 53 (66)			

Summing up

Nouns: 84 (106)

Verbs: 53 (66)

Adj.: 49 (58)

Adv.: 12 (13)

Prep.: 4 (6)

200 (247)

ЗАМИМА – ПРИЛОЖЕНИЕ – ADDITION MATERIALS

The Story of an Hour

by Kate Chopin



(Kate Chopin, born Katherine O'Flaherty; February 8, 1850 – August 22, 1904, was an American author of short stories and novels based in Louisiana. She is now considered by some scholars to have been a forerunner of American 20th century feminist authors of Southern or Catholic background, such as Zelda Fitzgerald.

Of maternal (mother) French and paternal (father) Irish descent, Chopin was born in St. Louis, Missouri. She married and moved with her husband to New Orleans. They later lived in the country in Cloutierville, Louisiana. From 1892 to 1895, Chopin wrote short stories for both children and adults that were published in such national magazines as Atlantic Monthly, Vogue, The Century Magazine, and The Youth's Companion. Her stories aroused controversy because of her subjects and her approach; they were condemned as immoral by some critics. Her major works were two short story collections: Bayou Folk (1894) and A Night in Acadie (1897).

This story was first published in 1894 as The Dream of an Hour before being republished under this title in 1895. We encourage students and teachers to use our The Story of An Hour Study Guide and Feminist Literature Study Guide).

Knowing that Mrs. Mallard was afflicted with a heart trouble, great care was taken to break to her as gently as possible the news of her husband's death.

It was her sister Josephine who told her, in broken sentences; veiled hints that revealed in half concealing. Her husband's friend Richards was there, too, near her. It was he who had been in the newspaper office when intelligence of the railroad disaster was received, with Brently Mallard's name leading the list of «killed.» He had only taken the time to assure himself of its truth by a second telegram, and had hastened to forestall any less careful, less tender friend in bearing the sad message.

She did not hear the story as many women have heard the same, with a paralyzed inability to accept its significance. She wept at once, with sudden, wild abandonment, in her sister's arms. When the storm of grief had spent itself she went away to her room alone. She would have no one follow her.

There stood, facing the open window, a comfortable, roomy armchair. Into this she sank, pressed down by a physical exhaustion that haunted her body and seemed to reach into her soul.

She could see in the open square before her house the tops of trees that were all aquiver with the new spring life. The delicious breath of

rain was in the air. In the street below a peddler was crying his wares. The notes of a distant song which someone was singing reached her faintly, and countless sparrows were twittering in the eaves.

There were patches of blue sky showing here and there through the clouds that had met and piled one above the other in the west facing her window.

She sat with her head thrown back upon the cushion of the chair, quite motionless, except when a sob came up into her throat and shook her, as a child who has cried itself to sleep continues to sob in its dreams.

She was young, with a fair, calm face, whose lines bespoke repression and even a certain strength. But now there was a dull stare in her eyes, whose gaze was fixed away off yonder on one of those patches of blue sky. It was not a glance of reflection, but rather indicated a suspension of intelligent thought.

There was something coming to her and she was waiting for it, fearfully. What was it? She did not know; it was too subtle and elusive to name. But she felt it, creeping out of the sky, reaching toward her through the sounds, the scents, the color that filled the air.

Now her bosom rose and fell tumultuously. She was beginning to recognize this thing that was approaching to possess her, and she was striving to beat it back with her will--as powerless as her two white slender hands would have been. When she abandoned herself a little whispered word escaped her slightly parted lips. She said it over and over under the breath: «free, free, free!» The vacant stare and the look of terror that had followed it went from her eyes. They stayed keen and bright. Her pulses beat fast, and the coursing blood warmed and relaxed every inch of her body.

Questions

1. Why was Mrs. Mallard very sad?
2. Who told Mrs. Mallard that her husband had died?
3. Who is Richards?
4. Where did Mrs. Mallard go when the storm of grief spent?

Vocabulary

1. afflict – to suffer from something
2. veiled /veild/ - not direct or expressed clearly

3. conceal /kən'si:l/ - to prevent something from being seen or known about; to hide something
4. hasten /heɪst/ - to hurry
5. forestall /fɔ:'stɔ:l/ - to prevent something from happening by acting first
6. bear /beə / - to accept, tolerate or endure especially something unpleasant
7. weep /wi:p/ (wept, wept) – cry
8. abandonment /ə'bæn.dən.mənt/ - in a completely uncontrolled way
9. grief /gri:f/ - very great sadness, especially at the death of someone
10. exhaustion /ɪg'zɔ:s.tʃ ə n/ - when you are extremely tired
11. peddler /'ped.lə r / - a person who travelled to different places to sell small goods, usually by going from house to house
12. patch /pætʃ/ - area
13. cushion /'kʊʃ. ə n/ - a bag made of cloth, plastic or leather which is filled with soft material
14. indicate /'m.dɪ.ket/ - to show, point or make clear in another way
15. suspension /sə'spen.ʃ ə n/ - when someone stops something happening
16. subtle /'sʌt.l/ - not loud, bright, noticeable or obvious in any way
17. tumultuously /tju:'mʌl.tjʊəsli/ - very loudly, or full of confusion
18. persist /pə'sɪst/ - if an unpleasant feeling or situation persists, it continues to exist
19. illumination /ɪ.lu:.mɪ'neɪ.ʃ ə n/ - explaining and showing more clearly something that is difficult to understand
20. imploring /ɪm'plɔ:.rɪŋ/ - asking someone to do or not do something in a very sincere, emotional and determined way
21. elixir /ɪ'lik.sɪə r / - a substance, usually a liquid, with a magical power to cure, improve or preserve
22. prayer /preə r / - the words that someone says or thinks when they are praying
23. hudder /'ʃʌd.ə r/ - to shake suddenly with very small movements
24. importunate /ɪm'pɔ:.tjʊ.nət/ - repeatedly asking for something, in a forceful and annoying way

25. descend /dɪ'send/- to go or come down
26. composedly /kəm'pəʊ.zɪd.li/ - calm and in control of your emotions
27. piercing /'piə.sɪŋ/ - going through or into something

The Interlopers
by H.H. Munro (SAKI)



(Hector Hugh Munro (Dec 18, 1870 - Nov 14, 1916) was a witty British author who published under the pen name SAKI or H.H. Munro. The inspiration for the pen name «Saki» is unknown, it may be based upon a character in a poem or on a South American monkey. As a writer, Munro (Saki) was a master of the short story form and is often compared to O. Henry and Dorothy Parker. E.F. Benson shares his sardonic style.

Munro was born in Akyab, Burma (now known as Myanmar) in 1870. In 1872 his mother Mary was charged by a cow while she was on a trip to England. She suffered a miscarriage, never recovered, and died in 1872 when Munro was only two years old. After her death, the Munro children were sent from Burma back to England where they lived with their grandmother and aunts in a strict puritanical household. In his early career, Munro became a police officer in India and was posted to Burma where he contracted malaria before returning to England in 1895. Munro died in France during World War I, on November 13, 1916, by German sniper fire during the Battle of Ancre).

In a forest of mixed growth somewhere on the eastern spurs of the Karpathians, a man stood one winter night watching and listening, as though he waited for some beast of the woods to come within the range of his vision, and, later, of his rifle. But the game for whose presence

he kept so keen an outlook was none that figured in the sportsman's calendar as lawful and proper for the chase; Ulrich von Gradwitz patrolled the dark forest in quest of a human enemy.

The forest lands of Gradwitz were of wide extent and well stocked with game; the narrow strip of precipitous woodland that lay on its outskirts was not remarkable for the game it harboured or the shooting it afforded, but it was the most jealously guarded of all its owner's territorial possessions. A famous law suit, in the days of his grandfather, had wrested it from the illegal possession of a neighbouring family of petty landowners; the dispossessed party had never acquiesced in the judgment of the Courts, and a long series of poaching affrays and similar scandals had embittered the relationships between the families for three generations. The neighbour feud had grown into a personal one since Ulrich had come to be head of his family; if there was a man in the world whom he detested and wished ill to it was Georg Znaeum, the inheritor of the quarrel and the tireless game-snatcher and raider of the disputed border-forest. The feud might, perhaps, have died down or been compromised if the personal ill-will of the two men had not stood in the way; as boys they had thirsted for one another's blood, as men each prayed that misfortune might fall on the other, and this wind-scourged winter night Ulrich had banded together his foresters to watch the dark forest, not in quest of four-footed quarry, but to keep a look-out for the prowling thieves whom he suspected of being afoot from across the land boundary. The roebuck, which usually kept in the sheltered hollows during a storm-wind, were running like driven things to-night, and there was movement and unrest among the creatures that were wont to sleep through the dark hours. Assuredly there was a disturbing element in the forest, and Ulrich could guess the quarter from whence it came.

He strayed away by himself from the watchers whom he had placed in ambush on the crest of the hill, and wandered far down the steep slopes amid the wild tangle of undergrowth, peering through the tree trunks and listening through the whistling and skirling of the wind and the restless beating of the branches for sight and sound of the marauders. If only on this wild night, in this dark, lone spot, he might come across Georg Znaeum, man to man, with none to witness--that was the wish that was uppermost in his thoughts. And as he stepped round the trunk of a huge beech he came face to face with the man he sought.

The two enemies stood glaring at one another for a long silent moment. Each had a rifle in his hand, each had hate in his heart and murder uppermost in his mind. The chance had come to give full play to the passions of a lifetime. But a man who has been brought up under the code of a restraining civilisation cannot easily nerve himself to shoot down his neighbour in cold blood and without word spoken, except for an offence against his hearth and honour. And before the moment of hesitation had given way to action a deed of Nature's own violence overwhelmed them both. A fierce shriek of the storm had been answered by a splitting crash over their heads, and ere they could leap aside a mass of falling beech tree had thundered down on them. Ulrich von Gradwitz found himself stretched on the ground, one arm numb beneath him and the other held almost as helplessly in a tight tangle of forked branches, while both legs were pinned beneath the fallen mass. His heavy shooting-boots had saved his feet from being crushed to pieces, but if his fractures were not as serious as they might have been, at least it was evident that he could not move from his present position till some one came to release him. The descending twig had slashed the skin of his face, and he had to wink away some drops of blood from his eyelashes before he could take in a general view of the disaster. At his side, so near that under ordinary circumstances he could almost have touched him, lay Georg Znaeym, alive and struggling, but obviously as helplessly pinioned down as himself. All round them lay a thick-strewn wreckage of splintered branches and broken twigs.

Relief at being alive and exasperation at his captive plight brought a strange medley of pious thank-offerings and sharp curses to Ulrich's lips. Georg, who was early blinded with the blood which trickled across his eyes, stopped his struggling for a moment to listen, and then gave a short, snarling laugh.

«So you're not killed, as you ought to be, but you're caught, anyway,» he cried; «caught fast. Ho, what a jest, Ulrich von Gradwitz snared in his stolen forest. There's real justice for you!»

And he laughed again, mockingly and savagely.

«I'm caught in my own forest-land,» retorted Ulrich. «When my men come to release us you will wish, perhaps, that you were in a better plight than caught poaching on a neighbour's land, shame on you.»

Georg was silent for a moment; then he answered quietly:

«Are you sure that your men will find much to release? I have men, too, in the forest to-night, close behind me, and _they_ will be here first and do the releasing. When they drag me out from under these damned branches it won't need much clumsiness on their part to roll this mass of trunk right over on the top of you. Your men will find you dead under a fallen beech tree. For form's sake I shall send my condolences to your family.»

«It is a useful hint,» said Ulrich fiercely. «My men had orders to follow in ten minutes time, seven of which must have gone by already, and when they get me out--I will remember the hint. Only as you will have met your death poaching on my lands I don't think I can decently send any message of condolence to your family.»

«Good,» snarled Georg, «good. We fight this quarrel out to the death, you and I and our foresters, with no cursed interlopers to come between us. Death and damnation to you, Ulrich von Gradwitz.»

«The same to you, Georg Znaeym, forest-thief, game-snatcher.»

Both men spoke with the bitterness of possible defeat before them, for each knew that it might be long before his men would seek him out or find him; it was a bare matter of chance which party would arrive first on the scene.

Both had now given up the useless struggle to free themselves from the mass of wood that held them down; Ulrich limited his endeavours to an effort to bring his one partially free arm near enough to his outer coat-pocket to draw out his wine-flask. Even when he had accomplished that operation it was long before he could manage the unscrewing of the stopper or get any of the liquid down his throat. But what a Heaven-sent draught it seemed! It was an open winter, and little snow had fallen as yet, hence the captives suffered less from the cold than might have been the case at that season of the year; nevertheless, the wine was warming and reviving to the wounded man, and he looked across with something like a throb of pity to where his enemy lay, just keeping the groans of pain and weariness from crossing his lips.

«Could you reach this flask if I threw it over to you?» asked Ulrich suddenly; «there is good wine in it, and one may as well be as comfortable as one can. Let us drink, even if to-night one of us dies.»

«No, I can scarcely see anything; there is so much blood caked round my eyes,» said Georg, «and in any case I don't drink wine with an enemy.»

Questions

1. Were the forest lands of Gradwitz of wide and well stocked with game?
2. Who came across Georg Znaeum?
3. Who was early blinded with the blood which trickled across his eyes?
4. Why did Ulrich say that it was shame on Georg?

Vocabulary

1. interloper /'ɪn.tə.ləʊ.pə r / - someone who becomes involved in an activity or a social group without being asked, or enters a place without permission
2. jealously /'dʒel.ə.sli/ - unhappy and angry because someone has something or someone you want
3. assuredly /ə'ʃʊ:.rɪd.li/ - confidently
4. whence /wen t s/ - (from) where
5. uppermost /'ʌp.ə.məʊst/ - in the highest position or having the most importance
6. fierce /fɪəs/ - physically violent and frightening
7. mockingly /'mɒk.ɪŋ.li/ - laughing at someone or something in an unkind way
8. retort /rɪ'tɔ:t/ - to answer someone quickly in an angry or funny way
9. plight /plaɪt/ - an unpleasant condition
10. hence /hen t s/ - that is the reason or explanation for; therefore
11. captive /'kæp.tɪv/ - to keep someone as a prisoner or make someone a prisoner
12. exhaustion /ɪg'zɔ:s.tʃ ə n/ - when you are extremely tired
13. reconciliation /,rek. ə n.sɪ.li'i'eɪ.ʃ ə n/ - when two people or groups of people become friendly again after they have argued

THE FLY

by Katherine Mansfield



(Katherine Mansfield was born in Wellington, New Zealand in 1888. Mansfield was the middle child, with two older and two younger siblings (brothers and sisters). As a teenager, she had a few stories published in her high school's magazine.

*In 1903, she and her sisters were enrolled at the Queen's College in London, England. Katherine perfected her cello skills and worked as an editor for the school's newspaper. While she finished her education, she traveled across Europe, and in 1906, she went home to New Zealand for several years before returning to London. In London, she then married George Charles Bowden. She returned to London again in 1910, and began writing more regularly. Katherine and John Murry were married in 1918, just after Katherine's divorced from Bowden was finalized. She secured her reputation as a writer with the story collection *Bliss* (1920). She reached the height of her powers with her 1922 collection *The Garden Party*. Her last five years were shadowed by tuberculosis; she died from the disease on January 9, 1923, at the age of 34.*

*Published in 1922, *The Fly* is often heralded as one of Katherine Mansfield's finest short stories. But it does not reward lazy readers! Your enjoyment of this story depends on how well you read the story. So please take your time and read it with careful attention. Readers will wish to contemplate the symbolism of the fly, and notice that the ending of the story plays on one of Woodfield's problems mentioned nearer to the beginning of the story).*

«Y'ARE very snug in here,» piped old Mr. Woodifield, and he peered out of the great, green leather armchair by his friend the boss's desk as a baby peers out of its pram. His talk was over; it was time for

him to be off. But he did not want to go. Since he had retired, since his... stroke, the wife and the girls kept him boxed up in the house every day of the week except Tuesday. On Tuesday he was dressed and brushed and allowed to cut back to the City for the day. Though what he did there the wife and girls couldn't imagine. Made a nuisance of himself to his friends, they supposed ... Well, perhaps so. All the same, we cling to our last pleasures as the tree clings to its last leaves. So there sat old Woodifield, smoking a cigar and staring almost greedily at the boss, who rolled in his office chair, stout, rosy, five years older than he, and still going strong, still at the helm. It did one good to see him. Wistfully, admiringly, the old voice added, «It's snug in here, upon my word!»

«Yes, it's comfortable enough,» agreed the boss, and he flipped the Financial Times with a paper-knife. As a matter of fact he was proud of his room ; he liked to have it admired, especially by old Woodifield. It gave him a feeling of deep, solid satisfaction to be planted there in the midst of it in full view of that frail old figure in the muffler.

«I've had it done up lately,» he explained, as he had explained for the past – how many? – weeks. « New carpet,» and he pointed to the bright red carpet with a pattern of large white rings. «New furniture,» and he nodded towards the massive bookcase and the table with legs like twisted treacle. «Electric heating!» He waved almost exultantly towards the five trans-parent, pearly sausages glowing so softly in the tilted copper pan.

But he did not draw old Woodifield's attention to the photograph over the table of a grave-looking boy in uniform standing in one of those spectral photographers' parks with photographers' storm-clouds behind him. It was not new. It had been there for over six years.

«There was something I wanted to tell you,» said old Woodifield, and his eyes grew dim remembering. «Now what was it? I had it in my mind when I started out this morning.» His hands began to tremble, and patches of red showed above his beard.

Poor old chap, he's on his last pins, thought the boss. And, feeling kindly, he winked at the old man, and said jokingly, «I tell you what. I've got a little drop of something here that'll do you good before you go out into the cold again. It's beautiful stuff. It wouldn't hurt a child.» He took a key off his watch-chain, unlocked a cupboard below his

desk, and drew forth a dark, squat bottle. «That's the medicine,» said he. «And the man from whom I got it told me on the strict Q.T. it came from the cellars at Windsor Cassel.»

Old Woodifield's mouth fell open at the sight. He couldn't have looked more surprised if the boss had produced a rabbit.

«It's whisky, ain't it?» he piped, feebly.

The boss turned the bottle and lovingly showed him the label. Whisky it was.

«D'you know,» said he, peering up at the boss wonderingly,» they won't let me touch it at home.» And he looked as though he was going to cry.

«Ah, that's where we know a bit more than the ladies,» cried the boss, swooping across for two tumblers that stood on the table with the water-bottle, and pouring a generous finger into each. «Drink it down. It'll do you good. And don't put any water with it. It's sacrilege to tamper with stuff like this. Ah!» He tossed off his, pulled out his handkerchief, hastily wiped his moustaches, and cocked an eye at old Woodifield, who was rolling his in his chaps.

The old man swallowed, was silent a moment, and then said faintly, «It's nutty!»

But it warmed him; it crept into his chill old brain – he remembered.

«That was it,» he said, heaving himself out of his chair. «I thought you'd like to know. The girls were in Belgium last week having a look at poor Reggie's grave, and they happened to come across your boy's. They're quite near each other, it seems.»

Old Woodifield paused, but the boss made no reply. Only a quiver in his eyelids showed that he heard.

«The girls were delighted with the way the place is kept,» piped the old voice. «Beautifully looked after. Couldn't be better if they were at home. You've not been across, have yer?»

«No, no ! « For various reasons the boss had not been across.

«There's miles of it,» quavered old Woodifield, « and it's all as neat as a garden. Flowers growing on all the graves. Nice broad paths.» It was plain from his voice how much he liked a nice broad path.

The pause came again. Then the old man brightened wonderfully.

«Do you know what the hotel made the girls pay for a pot of jam?» he piped. «Ten - francs! Robbery, I call it. It was a little pot, so Gertrude says, no bigger than a half-crown. And she hadn't taken more than a spoonful when they charged her ten francs. Gertrude brought the pot

away with her to teach 'em a lesson. Quite right, too; it's trading on our feelings. They think because we're over there having a look round we're ready to pay anything. That's what it is.» And he turned towards the door.

«Quite right, quite right!» cried the boss, though what was quite right he hadn't the least idea. He came round by his desk, followed the shuffling footsteps to the door, and saw the old fellow out. Woodfield was gone.

Questions

1. Who was smoking a cigar and staring almost greedily at the boss?
2. Was it the medicine from the cellars at Windsor Cassel?
3. Where did the girls go last week to have a look at poor Reggie's grave?

Vocabulary

1. sway /sweɪ/ - to move slowly from side to side
2. nuisance /'njuː s ə n t s/ - something or someone that annoys you or causes trouble for you
3. chap /tʃæp/ (ALSO chappie , ALSO chappy – a young man
4. swoop /swu:p/ - to move very quickly and easily through the air, especially down from a height in order to attack
5. nutty /'nʌt i/ - containing or tasting of nuts
6. quaver /'kweɪ.və r / - of a person's voice to sound shaky, especially because of emotion
7. shuffle /'ʃʌf.l/ - to walk by pulling your feet slowly along the ground rather than lifting them
8. marvellously, marvelously /'mɑː.v ə l.ə.sli/ - extremely good
9. immense /ɪ'men t s/ - extremely large in size or degree
10. suspense /sə'spen t s/ - the feeling of excitement or nervousness
11. blotting paper - thick soft paper for pressing onto a piece of paper you have just written on in ink, in order to dry it
12. added /'pæd.ɪd/ - containing a layer of soft material used for protection or to give shape

THE BOARDED WINDOW

by Ambrose Bierce



(Ambrose Bierce was born on June 24, 1842 in Meigs county, Ohio. He was the tenth of thirteen children. At the age of fifteen, he became a printer's devil at a small Ohio newspaper. He later joined the Union army during the Civil War, participating in a large number of battles and gaining first-hand experience of the horrors of war, a theme that would emerge in his later writing. He was seriously wounded in the head during the Battle of Kennesaw Mountain in 1864, and suffered from complications from this wound for the rest of his life.

He married Mary Ellen «Mollie» Day in 1871, and the couple had three children: Day, Leigh, and Helen. Two of the children died before Bierce, Day from suicide and Leigh from pneumonia. Bierce and his wife divorced in 1904.

The official date of Bierce's death is unknown. In 1913, he traveled to Mexico during the revolution in order to see the situation on the ground for himself).

The Boarded Window is one of the best regarded of Bierce's stories. For teachers and students, here is a close reading guide by Bridget M. Marshall: Teaching 'The Boarded Window' «There is a point at which terror may turn to madness; and madness incites to action.»

First log cabin built at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, 1903

In 1830, only a few miles away from what is now the great city of Cincinnati, lay an immense and almost unbroken forest. The whole region was sparsely settled by people of the frontier--restless souls who no sooner had hewn fairly habitable homes out of the wilderness and attained to that degree of prosperity which today we should call indigence, than, impelled by some mysterious impulse of their nature, they abandoned all and pushed farther westward, to encounter new

perils and privations in the effort to regain the meager comforts which they had voluntarily renounced. Many of them had already forsaken that region for the remoter settlements, but among those remaining was one who had been of those first arriving. He lived alone in a house of logs surrounded on all sides by the great forest, of whose gloom and silence he seemed a part, for no one had ever known him to smile nor speak a needless word. His simple wants were supplied by the sale or barter of skins of wild animals in the river town, for not a thing did he grow upon the land which, if needful, he might have claimed by right of undisturbed possession. There were evidences of «improvement»-a few acres of ground immediately about the house had once been cleared of its trees, the decayed stumps of which were half concealed by the new growth that had been suffered to repair the ravage wrought by the ax. Apparently the man's zeal for agriculture had burned with a failing flame, expiring in penitential ashes.

The little log house, with its chimney of sticks, its roof of warping clapboards weighted with traversing poles and its «chinking» of clay, had a single door and, directly opposite, a window. The latter, however, was boarded up-nobody could remember a time when it was not. And none knew why it was so closed; certainly not because of the occupant's dislike of light and air, for on those rare occasions when a hunter had passed that lonely spot the recluse had commonly been seen sunning himself on his doorstep if heaven had provided sunshine for his need. I fancy there are few persons living today who ever knew the secret of that window, but I am one, as you shall see.

The man's name was said to be Murlock. He was apparently seventy years old, actually about fifty. Something besides years had had a hand in his aging. His hair and long, full beard were white, his gray, lusterless eyes sunken, his face singularly seamed with wrinkles which appeared to belong to two intersecting systems. In figure he was tall and spare, with a stoop of the shoulders-a burden bearer. I never saw him; these particulars I learned from my grandfather, from whom also I got the man's story when I was a lad. He had known him when living near by in that early day.

One day Murlock was found in his cabin, dead. It was not a time and place for coroners and newspapers, and I suppose it was agreed that he had died from natural causes or I should have been told, and should remember. I know only that with what was probably a sense of the fitness of things the body was buried near the cabin, alongside the grave of his wife, who had preceded him by so many years that local

tradition had retained hardly a hint of her existence. That closes the final chapter of this true story-excepting, indeed, the circumstance that many years afterward, in company with an equally intrepid spirit, I penetrated to the place and ventured near enough to the ruined cabin to throw a stone against it, and ran away to avoid the ghost which every well-informed boy thereabout knew haunted the spot. But there is an earlier chapter-that supplied by my grandfather.

When Murlock built his cabin and began laying sturdily about with his ax to hew out a farm-the rifle, meanwhile, his means of support-he was young, strong and full of hope. In that eastern country whence he came he had married, as was the fashion, a young woman in all ways worthy of his honest devotion, who shared the dangers and privations of his lot with a willing spirit and light heart. There is no known record of her name; of her charms of mind and person tradition is silent and the doubter is at liberty to entertain his doubt; but God forbid that I should share it! Of their affection and happiness there is abundant assurance in every added day of the man's widowed life; for what but the magnetism of a blessed memory could have chained that venturesome spirit to a lot like that?

One day Murlock returned from gunning in a distant part of the forest to find his wife prostrate with fever, and delirious. There was no physician within miles, no neighbor; nor was she in a condition to be left, to summon help. So he set about the task of nursing her back to health, but at the end of the third day she fell into unconsciousness and so passed away, apparently, with never a gleam of returning reason.

From what we know of a nature like his we may venture to sketch in some of the details of the outline picture drawn by my grandfather. When convinced that she was dead, Murlock had sense enough to remember that the dead must be prepared for burial. In performance of this sacred duty he blundered now and again, did certain things incorrectly, and others which he did correctly were done over and over. His occasional failures to accomplish some simple and ordinary act filled him with astonishment, like that of a drunken man who wonders at the suspension of familiar natural laws. He was surprised, too, that he did not weep-surprised and a little ashamed; surely it is unkind not to weep for the dead. «Tomorrow,» he said aloud, «I shall have to make the coffin and dig the grave; and then I shall miss her, when she is no longer in sight; but now-she is dead, of course, but it is all right-it must be all right, somehow. Things cannot be so bad as they seem.»

He stood over the body in the fading light, adjusting the hair and putting the finishing touches to the simple toilet, doing all mechanically, with soulless care. And still through his consciousness ran an undersense of conviction that all was right--that he should have her again as before, and everything explained. He had had no experience in grief; his capacity had not been enlarged by use. His heart could not contain it all, nor his imagination rightly conceive it. He did not know he was so hard struck; that knowledge would come later, and never go. Grief is an artist of powers as various as the instruments upon which he plays his dirges for the dead, evoking from some the sharpest, shrillest notes, from others the low, grave chords that throb recurrent like the slow beating of a distant drum. Some natures it startles; some it stupefies. To one it comes like the stroke of an arrow, stinging all the sensibilities to a keener life; to another as the blow of a bludgeon, which in crushing benumbs. We may conceive Murlock to have been that way affected, for (and here we are upon surer ground than that of conjecture) no sooner had he finished his pious work than, sinking into a chair by the side of the table upon which the body lay, and noting how white the profile showed in the deepening gloom, he laid his arms upon the table's edge, and dropped his face into them, tearless yet and unutterably weary. At that moment came in through the open window a long, wailing sound like the cry of a lost child in the far deeps of the darkening woods! But the man did not move. Again, and nearer than before, sounded that unearthly cry upon his failing sense. Perhaps it was a wild beast; perhaps it was a dream. For Murlock was asleep.

Questions

1. What pushed farther westward?
2. How old was Murlock?
3. How did Murlock's wife feel when he returned from gunning?
4. Can you describe Murlock when he was standing over the body?
5. Why his (Murlock's) throat was powerless, his arms and hands were like lead?
6. What kind of fragment was between the teeth?

Vocabulary

1. board sth up - to cover a door or window with wooden boards
2. impel /ɪm'pel/ - to make someone feel that they must do something
3. peril /'per. ə l/ - great danger, or something that is very dangerous

4. forsake /fɔː'seɪk/ - to leave someone forever, especially when they need you
5. wrought /rɔːt/ - made or done in a careful or decorative way
6. ghost /gəʊst/ - the spirit of a dead person, sometimes represented as a pale, almost transparent image of that person, which some people believe appears to people who are alive
7. whereabouts /'ðeərəbaʊts/ - approximately
8. haunted /'hɔːntɪd/ - showing signs of suffering or severe anxiety
9. prostrate /'prɒstreɪt/ - lying with the face down and arms stretched out, especially in obedience or worship
10. arid /'ær.ɪd/ - very dry and without enough rain for plants
11. bludgeon /'blʌdʒən/ - to hit someone hard and repeatedly with a heavy weapon
12. conceive /kən'siːv/ - to imagine something
13. spring /sprɪŋ/ - to move quickly and suddenly towards a particular place
14. perforce /pə'fɔːs/ - because it is necessary
15. vainly /'veɪn.li/ - unsuccessfully
16. lead /liːd/ - hard metal
17. deranged /dɪ'reɪndʒd/ - completely unable to think clearly or behave in a controlled

THE NIGHTINGALE AND THE ROSE

by Oscar Wilde



(Oscar Fingal O'Flahertie Wills Wilde was born on October 16, 1854 in Dublin, author, playwright and poet Oscar Wilde was a popular literary figure in late Victorian England, known for his brilliant wit, flamboyant style and infamous imprisonment for homosexuality. After

graduating from Oxford University, he lectured as a poet, art critic and a leading proponent of the principles of aestheticism. In 1891, he published The Picture of Dorian Gray, his only novel which was panned as immoral by Victorian critics, but is now considered one of his most notable works. As a dramatist, many of Wilde's plays were well received including his satirical comedies Lady Windermere's Fan (1892), A Woman of No Importance (1893), An Ideal Husband (1895) and The Importance of Being Earnest (1895), his most famous play. Unconventional in his writing and life, Wilde's affair with a young man led to his arrest on charges of «gross indecency» in 1895).

The Nightingale and the Rose was first published in 1888 as part of Oscar Wilde's collection of children's stories entitled The Happy Prince and Other Tales. That collection of children's stories also includes: The Happy Prince, The Selfish Giant, The Devoted Friend, and The Remarkable Rocket.

«She said that she would dance with me if I brought her red roses,» cried the young Student; «but in all my garden there is no red rose.»

From her nest in the holm-oak tree the Nightingale heard him, and she looked out through the leaves, and wondered.

«No red rose in all my garden!» he cried, and his beautiful eyes filled with tears. «Ah, for what little things does happiness depend! I have read all that the wise men have written, and all the secrets of philosophy are mine, yet for want of a red rose is my life made wretched.»

«Here at last is a true lover,» said the Nightingale. «Night after night have I sung of him, though I knew him not: night after night have I told his story to the stars, and now I see him. His hair is dark as the hyacinth-blossom, and his lips are red as the rose of his desire; but passion has made his face like pale ivory, and sorrow has set her seal upon his brow.»

«The Prince gives a ball to-morrow night,» murmured the young Student, «and my love will be of the company. If I bring her a red rose she will dance with me till dawn. If I bring her a red rose, I shall hold her in my arms, and she will lean her head upon my shoulder, and her hand will be clasped in mine. But there is no red rose in my garden, so I shall sit lonely, and she will pass me by. She will have no heed of me, and my heart will break.»

«Here indeed is the true lover,» said the Nightingale. «What I sing of, he suffers - what is joy to me, to him is pain. Surely Love is a wonderful thing. It is more precious than emeralds, and dearer than fine opals. Pearls and pomegranates cannot buy it, nor is it set forth in the marketplace. It may not be purchased of the merchants, nor can it be weighed out in the balance for gold.»

«The musicians will sit in their gallery,» said the young Student, «and play upon their stringed instruments, and my love will dance to the sound of the harp and the violin. She will dance so lightly that her feet will not touch the floor, and the courtiers in their gay dresses will throng round her. But with me she will not dance, for I have no red rose to give her»; and he flung himself down on the grass, and buried his face in his hands, and wept.

«Why is he weeping?» asked a little Green Lizard, as he ran past him with his tail in the air.

«Why, indeed?» said a Butterfly, who was fluttering about after a sunbeam.

«Why, indeed?» whispered a Daisy to his neighbour, in a soft, low voice.

«He is weeping for a red rose,» said the Nightingale.

«For a red rose?» they cried; «how very ridiculous!» and the little Lizard, who was something of a cynic, laughed outright.

But the Nightingale understood the secret of the Student's sorrow, and she sat silent in the oak-tree, and thought about the mystery of Love.

Suddenly she spread her brown wings for flight, and soared into the air. She passed through the grove like a shadow, and like a shadow she sailed across the garden.

In the centre of the grass-plot was standing a beautiful Rose-tree, and when she saw it she flew over to it, and lit upon a spray.

«Give me a red rose,» she cried, «and I will sing you my sweetest song.»

But the Tree shook its head.

Questions

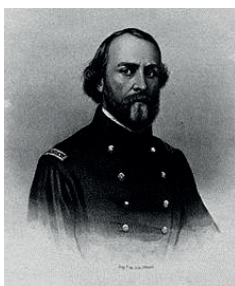
1. What kind of roses did she ask from the young Student to bring?
2. Who will dance when the musicians sit in their gallery and play upon their stringed instruments?

3. How many red roses did the Nightingale from the Tree to sing the sweet song?
4. Why didn't the Tree have any red rose?
5. To whom did the Nightingale say: «Be happy, be happy!»?

Vocabulary

1. nightingale /'naɪ tɪŋgeɪl/ - a small brown bird known especially for the beautiful song board sth up - to cover a door or window with wooden boards
2. philosophy /fɪ'lɒs əfi/ - the use of reason in understanding such things as the nature of reality and existence, the use and limits of knowledge and the principles that govern and influence moral judgment impel /ɪm'pel/ - to make someone feel that they must do something
3. murmur /'mɜ:mə r/ - to speak or say very quietly
4. flutter /'flʌt ə r/ - to make a series of quick movements up and down or from side to side
5. nip /nɪp/ - to go somewhere quickly or be somewhere for only a short time
6. marvellous = marvelous /'mɑ:v ə l əs/ - extremely good
7. metaphysics /,metə'fɪz.ɪks/ - the part of philosophy that is about understanding existence and knowledge

LETTER TO SARAH BALLOU **by Sullivan Ballou**



(Sullivan Ballou was born March 28, 1829, in Smithfield, Rhode Island, Ballou was educated at Phillips Academy in Andover, Massachusetts; Brown University in Providence, Rhode Island; and the National Law School in Ballston, New York. He was admitted to the Rhode Island Bar in 1853.

Ballou devoted his brief life to public service. He was elected in 1854 as clerk of the Rhode Island House of Representatives, later serving as its speaker. He married Sarah Hart Shumway on October 15, 1855, and the following year saw the birth of their first child, Edgar. A second son, William, was born in 1859. Ballou immediately entered the military after the war broke out in 1861. He became judge advocate of the Rhode Island militia and was 32 at the time of his death at the First Battle of Bull Run on July 21, 1861.

When he died, his wife was 24. She later moved to New Jersey to live out her life with her son, William, and never remarried. She died at age 80 in 1917. Sullivan and Sarah Ballou are buried next to each other at Swan Point Cemetery in Providence, Rhode Island. They have no known living descendants.

Sullivan Ballou was killed a week later at the First Battle of Bull Run, July 21, 1861).

My very dear Sarah:

The indications are very strong that we shall move in a few days—perhaps tomorrow.

Lest I should not be able to write you again, I feel impelled to write lines that may fall under your eye when I shall be no more.

Our movement may be one of a few days duration and full of pleasure—and it maybe one of severe conflict and death to me. Not my will, but thine O God, be done. If it is necessary that I should fall on the battlefield for my country, I am ready. I have no misgivings about, or lack of confidence in, the cause in which I am engaged, and my courage does not halt or falter.

I know how strongly American Civilization now leans upon the triumph of the Government, and how great a debt we owe to those who went before us through the blood and suffering of the Revolution. And I am willing—perfectly willing—to lay down all my joys in this life, to help maintain this Government, and to pay that debt. But, my dear wife, when I know that with my own joys I lay down nearly all of yours, and replace them in this life with cares and sorrows—when, after having eaten for long years the bitter fruit of orphanage myself, I must offer it as their only sustenance to my dear little children – is it weak or dishonorable, while the banner of my purpose floats calmly and proudly in the breeze, that my unbounded love for you, my darling

wife and children, should struggle in fierce, though useless, contest with my love of country.

Sarah, my love for you is deathless, it seems to bind me to you with mighty cables that nothing, but Omnipotence could break; and yet my love of Country comes over me like a strong wind and bears me irresistibly on with all these chains to the battlefield.

The memories of the blissful moments I have spent with you come creeping over me, and I feel most gratified to God and to you that I have enjoyed them so long. And hard it is for me to give them up and burn to ashes the hopes of future years, when God willing, we might still have lived and loved together and seen our sons grow up to honorable manhood around us. I have, I know, but few and small claims upon Divine Providence, but something whispers to me—perhaps it is the wafted prayer of my little Edgar—that I shall return to my loved ones unharmed. If I do not, my dear Sarah, never forget how much I love you, and when my last breath escapes me on the battlefield, it will whisper your name.

Forgive my many faults, and the many pains I have caused you. How thoughtless and foolish I have often been! How gladly would I wash out with my tears every little spot upon your happiness, and struggle with all the misfortune of this world, to shield you and my children from harm. But I cannot. I must watch you from the spirit land and hover near you, while you buffet the storms with your precious little freight, and wait with sad patience till we meet to part no more. But, O Sarah! If the dead can come back to this earth and flit unseen around those they loved, I shall always be near you; in the brightest day and in the darkest night—amidst your happiest scenes and gloomiest hours—always, always; and if there be a soft breeze upon your cheek, it shall be my breath; or the cool air fans your throbbing temple, it shall be my spirit passing by.

Sarah, do not mourn me dead; think I am gone and wait for me, for we shall meet again. As for my little boys, they will grow as I have done, and never know a father's love and care. Little Willie is too young to remember me long, and my blue-eyed Edgar will keep my frolics with him among the dimmest memories of his childhood. Sarah, I have unlimited confidence in your maternal care and your development of their characters.

Tell my two mothers his and hers I call God's blessing upon them.

O Sarah, I wait for you there! Come to me, and lead thither my children.

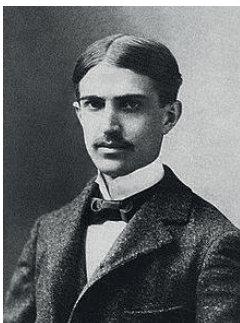
Questions

1. Who wrote this letter?
2. To whom was letter written?
3. What does Sullivan Ballou think about the people they went before them through the blood and suffering of the Revolution?
4. Why does Sullivan ask Sarah to forgive him?
5. How many children did they have?
6. Whom does Sullivan mean with saying: "...my two mothers..."?

Vocabulary

1. lest /lest/ in order to prevent any possibility that something will happen
2. thine /ðain/ - your
3. lean /li:n/ - to move the top in a particular direction
4. irresistibly /,ɪr.ɪ'zɪs.tə.bli/ - impossible to refuse
5. providence /'prɒvɪdənts/ - an influence which is not human in origin and is thought to control whether or not people receive the things which they need
6. mourn /mɔ:n/ - to feel or express great sadness, especially because of someone's death
7. frolic /'frɒl.ɪk/ - to behave in a happy and playful way
8. dim /dim/ - not clear

THE VETERAN by Stephen Crane



(American novelist, short story writer, and poet Stephen Crane was born November 1st, 1871. His best known novel is, of course, The Red Badge of Courage (1895); an impressionistic novel about Henry Fleming, a soldier participating in the Civil War who experiences and struggles with cowardice and bravery on the field of battle.)

Crane is less well known for his short stories, poems, and essays but the modern reader will discover that he produced excellent work beyond his widely known novel. A Dark Brown Dog is a superlative effort and well-known to short enthusiasts. For students and teachers, we offer a helpful Study Guide. You will find other great stories listed on this page, including An Experiment in Misery and his «unknown sequel» to The Red Badge of Courage, The Veteran, and In the Depths of a Coal Mine. Crane's first book, Maggie, A Girl of the Streets, was about an innocent slum girl and how she fell into the world of prostitution. Quite scandalous for the times, Crane published this work under the pseudonym «Johnson Smith» in 1893 at his own expense.

Crane continued to write prolifically until his life was cut short, a victim of tuberculosis at the age of 28. He died in sanatorium in Germany's Black Fores on June 5, 1900.

The Veteran was first published in McClure's Magazine in 1896, a year after the publication of The Red Badge of Courage (1895). While The Veteran stands alone as a great short story, it might be best to describe it as the unknown sequel to the The Red Badge of Courage. In this story, Crane re-introduces Henry Fleming, this time as an old man. The author also clears away a question of setting by establishing Chancellorsville as the setting for the Fleming's battlefield baptism in the The Red Badge of Courage. The Veteran also adds depth and color to Henry Fleming as a character and allows the author a final commentary on the question of courage and its different appearances).

Out of the low window could be seen three hickory trees placed irregularly in a meadow that was resplendent in spring-time green. Farther away, the old, dismal belfry of the village church loomed over the pines. A horse, meditating in the shade of one of the hickories, lazily swished his tail. The warm sunshine made an oblong of vivid yellow on the floor of the grocery.

«Could you see the whites of their eyes?» said the man, who was seated on a soap box.

«Nothing of the kind,» replied old Henry warmly. «Just a lot of flitting figures, and I let go at where they 'peared to be the thickest. Bang!»

«Mr. Fleming,» said the grocer--his deferential voice expressed somehow the old man's exact social weight--»Mr. Fleming, you never was frightened much in them battles, was you?»

The veteran looked down and grinned. Observing his manner, the entire group tittered. «Well, I guess I was,» he answered finally. «Pretty well scared, sometimes. Why, in my first battle I thought the sky was falling down. I thought the world was coming to an end. You bet I was scared.»

Every one laughed. Perhaps it seemed strange and rather wonderful to them that a man should admit the thing, and in the tone of their laughter there was probably more admiration than if old Fleming had declared that he had always been a lion. Moreover, they knew that he had ranked as an orderly sergeant, and so their opinion of his heroism was fixed. None, to be sure, knew how an orderly sergeant ranked, but then it was understood to be somewhere just shy of a major-general's stars. So, when old Henry admitted that he had been frightened, there was a laugh.

«The trouble was,» said the old man, «I thought they were all shooting at me. Yes, sir, I thought every man in the other army was aiming at me in particular, and only me. And it seemed so darned unreasonable, you know. I wanted to explain to 'em what an almighty good fellow I was, because I thought then they might quit all trying to hit me. But I couldn't explain, and they kept on being unreasonable-blim! -blam! bang! So I run!»

Two little triangles of wrinkles appeared at the corners of his eyes. Evidently he appreciated some comedy in this recital. Down near his feet, however, little Jim, his grandson, was visibly horror-stricken. His hands were clasped nervously, and his eyes were wide with astonishment at this terrible scandal, his most magnificent grandfather telling such a thing.

«That was at Chancellorsville. Of course, afterward I got kind of used to it. A man does. Lots of men, though, seem to feel all right from the start. I did, as soon as I 'got on to it,' as they say now; but at first I was pretty well flustered. Now, there was young Jim Conklin, old Si Conklin's son-that used to keep the tannery-you none of you recollect him-well, he went into it from the start just as if he was born to it. But with me it was different. I had to get used to it.»

When little Jim walked with his grandfather he was in the habit of skipping along on the stone pavement, in front of the three stores and the hotel of the town, and betting that he could avoid the cracks. But upon this day he walked soberly, with his hand gripping two of his grandfather's fingers. Sometimes he kicked abstractedly at dandelions

that curved over the walk. Any one could see that he was much troubled.

«There's Sickles's colt over in the medder, Jimmie,» said the old man. «Don't you wish you owned one like him?»

«Um,» said the boy, with a strange lack of interest. He continued his reflections. Then finally he ventured: «Grandpa-now-was that true what you was telling those men?»

«What?» asked the grandfather. «What was I telling them?»

«Oh, about your running.»

«Why, yes, that was true enough, Jimmie. It was my first fight, and there was an awful lot of noise, you know.»

Jimmie seemed dazed that this idol, of its own will, should so totter. His stout boyish idealism was injured.

Presently the grandfather said: «Sickles's colt is going for a drink. Don't you wish you owned Sickles's colt, Jimmie?»

The boy merely answered: «He ain't as nice as our'n.» He lapsed then into another moody silence.

* * * * *

One of the hired men, a Swede, desired to drive to the county seat for purposes of his own. The old man loaned a horse and an unwashed buggy. It appeared later that one of the purposes of the Swede was to get drunk.

After quelling some boisterous frolic of the farm hands and boys in the garret, the old man had that night gone peacefully to sleep, when he was aroused by clamouring at the kitchen door. He grabbed his trousers, and they waved out behind as he dashed forward. He could hear the voice of the Swede, screaming and blubbering. He pushed the wooden button, and, as the door flew open, the Swede, a maniac, stumbled inward, chattering, weeping, still screaming: «De barn fire! Fire! Fire! De barn fire! Fire! Fire! Fire!»

There was a swift and indescribable change in the old man. His face ceased instantly to be a face; it became a mask, a grey thing, with horror written about the mouth and eyes. He hoarsely shouted at the foot of the little rickety stairs, and immediately, it seemed, there came down an avalanche of men. No one knew that during this time the old lady had been standing in her night-clothes at the bedroom door, yelling: «What's th' matter? What's th' matter? What's th' matter?»

When they dashed toward the barn it presented to their eyes its usual appearance, solemn, rather mystic in the black night. The Swede's lantern was overturned at a point some yards in front of the barn doors. It contained a wild little conflagration of its own, and even in their excitement some of those who ran felt a gentle secondary vibration of the thrifty part of their minds at sight of this overturned lantern. Under ordinary circumstances it would have been a calamity.

But the cattle in the barn were trampling, trampling, trampling, and above this noise could be heard a humming like the song of innumerable bees. The old man hurled aside the great doors, and a yellow flame leaped out at one corner and sped and wavered frantically up the old grey wall. It was glad, terrible, this single flame, like the wild banner of deadly and triumphant foes.

The motley crowd from the garret had come with all the pails of the farm. They flung themselves upon the well. It was a leisurely old machine, long dwelling in indolence. It was in the habit of giving out water with a sort of reluctance. The men stormed at it, cursed it; but it continued to allow the buckets to be filled only after the wheezy windlass had howled many protests at the mad-handed men.

With his opened knife in his hand old Fleming himself had gone headlong into the barn, where the stifling smoke swirled with the air currents, and where could be heard in its fulness the terrible chorus of the flames, laden with tones of hate and death, a hymn of wonderful ferocity.

Questions

1. Was Mr. Fleming ever frightened much in the battles?
2. Why did everyone laugh at Mr. Fleming's answer?
3. Who liked skipping along on the stone pavement, in front of the three stores and the hotel of the town?
4. Where had the old lady been standing in her night-clothes and yelling?
5. How much water did they pour on the old man?
6. Who wanted to get out the two forgotten colts in the box-stalls at the back of the barn?

Vocabulary

1. veteran /'vetərən/ - a person who has had a lot of experience of a particular activity

2. soapbox /'səʊp bɒks/ - a rough wooden box or any raised temporary platform for people to stand on while making informal public speeches
3. deferential /,def ə'rentʃəl/ - polite and showing respect
4. darn /dɑ:n/ - to repair a hole or a piece of clothing
5. appreciate /ə'pri: .ʃi.ert/ - value
6. recital /rɪ'saɪ t ə l/ - a performance of music or poetry
7. soberly /'səʊ b ə l i/ - seriously and reasonably
8. venture /'ven tʃə r / - to risk going somewhere
9. dazed /deɪzd/ - very confused and unable to think clearly
10. idol /'aɪ d ə l/ - someone who is admired and respected very much
11. otter /'tɒt ə r / - to walk in a shaky way that looks as if you are about to fall
12. quell /kwel/ - to stop something, especially by using force
13. boisterous /'bɔɪ st ə r.əs/ - noisy, energetic and rough
14. blubber /'blʌb.ə r / - to cry in a noisy way like a child
15. dashed /dæʃt/ - extremely
16. trample /'træm pl/ - to step heavily on something or someone, causing damage or injury
17. de- /di:/ - used to add the meaning 'opposite', 'remove' or 'reduce' to a noun or verb
18. motley /'mɒt li/ - consisting of many different types and therefore appearing strange or of low quality
19. garret /'gær ɪt/ - a very small uncomfortable room at the top of a house
20. ingenuity /,ɪndʒə'nju: ɪ.ti/ - someone's ability to think of clever new ways of doing something
21. souse /saʊs/ - to make something completely wet
22. sinister /'sɪn ɪ stə r / - making you feel that something bad or evil might happen
23. staggered /'stæg əd/ - very shocked or surprised
24. unutterable /ʌn'ʌt ə r ə bl/ - too bad to be expressed in words; extreme
25. daunt /dɔ:nt/ - to discourage

TO THE VIRGINS, TO MAKE MUCH OF TIME

by Robert Herrick



*(Robert Herrick (baptised 24 August 1591 – buried 15 October 1674) was a 17th century English lyric poet and cleric. He is best known for *Hesperides*, a book of poems. This includes the carpe diempoem «To the Virgins, to Make Much of Time», with the first line «Gather ye rosebuds while ye may».)*

Robert was born in Cheapside, London; he was the seventh child and fourth son of Julia Stone and Nicholas Herrick.

He graduated from St John's College, Cambridge at age twenty-two. He later migrated to Trinity Hall graduating in 1617. Robert Herrick became a member of the Sons of Ben, a group centered upon an admiration for the works of Ben Jonson. Herrick wrote at least five poems to Jonson. Herrick was ordained in 1623 and in 1629 became the vicar of Dean Prior in Devonshire.

In 1647, in the wake of the English Civil War, Herrick was ejected from his vicarage for refusing the Solemn League and Covenant. He then returned to London, living in Westminster and depending on the charity of his friends and family.

Herrick became the vicar of Dean Prior again in the summer of 1662 and lived there until his death in October 1674, at the age of 83. His date of death is not known, but he was buried on 15 October. Herrick was a bachelor all his life, and many of the women he names in his poems are thought to be fictional.

*Published in 1648 this poem originally appeared in Herrick's book of poetry *Hesperides* as poem 208. The poem is in the carpe diem theme or genre which promotes the idea that life is brief and one must live for the moment. The poem enjoyed some popular culture notoriety when it was featured in the movie *Dead Poets Society* (1989) where it was read*

by Robin Williams in his role as English teacher John Keating at an exclusive all-male preparatory school).

Gather ye rosebuds while ye may,
Old time is still a-flying;
And this same flower that smiles today
Tomorrow will be dying.

The glorious lamp of heaven the sun,
The higher he's a-getting,
The sooner will his race be run,
And nearer he's to setting.

That age is best which is the first,
When youth and blood are warmer;
But being spent, the worse, and worst
Times still succeed the former.

Then be not coy, but use your time,
And, while ye may, go marry;
For, having lost but once your prime,
You may forever tarry.

Questions

1. Who wrote the poem?
2. When was the poem written?
3. What does the poem promote?
4. Who reads the poem in the movie *Dead Poets Society*; Robin Williams or John Keating?
5. Whom does Sullivan mean with saying: "...my two mothers..."?
6. With whom did Colonel Harmon send to have permission to silence the enemy's guns? Who was he? What was his name?
7. Where was Captain Coulter from?»
8. What did Colonel Harmon's messenger say about Captain Coulter's family, especially about his wife?
9. Who was Lieutenant Williams?
10. Why did the colonel send his cavalcade to the right about?
11. Why did Barbour (the orderly) and Colonel go into the cellar during supper time?
12. Whom did Barbour (the orderly) and Colonel see in the cellar?

Vocabulary

1. virgin /'vɜː dʒɪn/ - (HUMOROUS) a person with no experience of a particular activity
2. genre /'ʒɑː rə/ - a style, especially in the arts
3. notoriety /,nəʊ t ə r'ɑː.ə ti/ - the state of being famous for something bad
4. coy /kɔɪ/ - intentionally keeping something secret
5. ye /ji:/ = 'you'

A JOURNEY by Edith Wharton



(Edith Wharton, née Edith Newbold Jones, (born January 24, 1862, New York, New York, U.S. – died August 11, 1937, Saint-Brice-sous-Forêt, near Paris, France), American author best known for her stories and novels about the upper-class society into which she was born.

Edith Jones came of a distinguished and long-established New York family. She was educated by private tutors and governesses at home and in Europe, where the family resided for six years after the American Civil War. She married Edward Wharton, a wealthy Boston banker, in 1885.

Her major literary model was Henry James, whom she knew, and her work reveals James's concern for artistic form and ethical issues.

*Wharton's best-known work is the long tale *Ethan Frome* (1911), which exploits the grimmer possibilities of the New England farm life she observed from her home in Lenox, Massachusetts. In all Wharton published more than 50 books, including fiction, short stories, travel books, historical novels, and criticism.*

She lived in France after 1907. She was divorced from her husband in 1913 and was a close friend of novelist James in his later years. Edith

Wharton later died of a stroke on August 11, 1937 at Le Pavillon Colombe. A Journey was published in 1889, about a woman's mixed emotions as her husband's health declines rapidly on their train ride home. «Life had a grudge against her: she was never to be allowed to spread her wings).»

Northern Pacific Railroad car, 1893

As she lay in her berth, staring at the shadows overhead, the rush of the wheels was in her brain, driving her deeper and deeper into circles of wakeful lucidity. The sleeping-car had sunk into its night-silence. Through the wet window-pane she watched the sudden lights, the long stretches of hurrying blackness. Now and then she turned her head and looked through the opening in the hangings at her husband's curtains across the aisle....

She wondered restlessly if he wanted anything and if she could hear him if he called. His voice had grown very weak within the last months and it irritated him when she did not hear. This irritability, this increasing childish petulance seemed to give expression to their imperceptible estrangement. Like two faces looking at one another through a sheet of glass they were close together, almost touching, but they could not hear or feel each other: the conductivity between them was broken. She, at least, had this sense of separation, and she fancied sometimes that she saw it reflected in the look with which he supplemented his failing words. Doubtless the fault was hers. She was too impenetrably healthy to be touched by the irrelevancies of disease. Her self-reproachful tenderness was tinged with the sense of his irrationality: she had a vague feeling that there was a purpose in his helpless tyrannies. The suddenness of the change had found her so unprepared. A year ago their pulses had beat to one robust measure; both had the same prodigal confidence in an exhaustless future. Now their energies no longer kept step: hers still bounded ahead of life, preempting unclaimed regions of hope and activity, while his lagged behind, vainly struggling to overtake her.

When they married, she had such arrears of living to make up: her days had been as bare as the whitewashed school-room where she forced innutritious facts upon reluctant children. His coming had broken in on the slumber of circumstance, widening the present till it became the encloser of remotest chances. But imperceptibly the horizon narrowed. Life had a grudge against her: she was never to be allowed to spread her wings.

At first the doctors had said that six weeks of mild air would set him right; but when he came back this assurance was explained as having of course included a winter in a dry climate. They gave up their pretty house, storing the wedding presents and new furniture, and went to Colorado. She had hated it there from the first. Nobody knew her or cared about her; there was no one to wonder at the good match she had made, or to envy her the new dresses and the visiting-cards which were still a surprise to her. And he kept growing worse. She felt herself beset with difficulties too evasive to be fought by so direct a temperament. She still loved him, of course; but he was gradually, undefinably ceasing to be himself. The man she had married had been strong, active, gently masterful: the male whose pleasure it is to clear a way through the material obstructions of life; but now it was she who was the protector, he who must be shielded from importunities and given his drops or his beef-juice though the skies were falling. The routine of the sick-room bewildered her; this punctual administering of medicine seemed as idle as some uncomprehended religious mummary.

There were moments, indeed, when warm gushes of pity swept away her instinctive resentment of his condition, when she still found his old self in his eyes as they groped for each other through the dense medium of his weakness. But these moments had grown rare. Sometimes he frightened her: his sunken expressionless face seemed that of a stranger; his voice was weak and hoarse; his thin-lipped smile a mere muscular contraction. Her hand avoided his damp soft skin, which had lost the familiar roughness of health: she caught herself furtively watching him as she might have watched a strange animal. It frightened her to feel that this was the man she loved; there were hours when to tell him what she suffered seemed the one escape from her fears. But in general she judged herself more leniently, reflecting that she had perhaps been too long alone with him, and that she would feel differently when they were at home again, surrounded by her robust and buoyant family. How she had rejoiced when the doctors at last gave their consent to his going home! She knew, of course, what the decision meant; they both knew. It meant that he was to die; but they dressed the truth in hopeful euphuisms, and at times, in the joy of preparation, she really forgot the purpose of their journey, and slipped into an eager allusion to next year's plans.

At last the day of leaving came. She had a dreadful fear that they would never get away; that somehow at the last moment he would

fail her; that the doctors held one of their accustomed treacheries in reserve; but nothing happened. They drove to the station, he was installed in a seat with a rug over his knees and a cushion at his back, and she hung out of the window waving unregretful farewells to the acquaintances she had really never liked till then.

The first twenty-four hours had passed off well. He revived a little and it amused him to look out of the window and to observe the humours of the car. The second day he began to grow weary and to chafe under the dispassionate stare of the freckled child with the lump of chewing-gum. She had to explain to the child's mother that her husband was too ill to be disturbed: a statement received by that lady with a resentment visibly supported by the maternal sentiment of the whole car....

That night he slept badly and the next morning his temperature frightened her: she was sure he was growing worse. The day passed slowly, punctuated by the small irritations of travel. Watching his tired face, she traced in its contractions every rattle and jolt of the tram, till her own body vibrated with sympathetic fatigue. She felt the others observing him too, and hovered restlessly between him and the line of interrogative eyes. The freckled child hung about him like a fly; offers of candy and picture-books failed to dislodge her: she twisted one leg around the other and watched him imperturbably. The porter, as he passed, lingered with vague proffers of help, probably inspired by philanthropic passengers swelling with the sense that «something ought to be done;» and one nervous man in a skull-cap was audibly concerned as to the possible effect on his wife's health.

(THE STORY CONTINUES)

The hours dragged on in a dreary inoccupation. Towards dusk she sat down beside him and he laid his hand on hers. The touch startled her. He seemed to be calling her from far off. She looked at him helplessly and his smile went through her like a physical pang.

«Are you very tired?» she asked.

«No, not very.»

«We'll be there soon now.»

«Yes, very soon.»

«This time to-morrow-»

He nodded and they sat silent. When she had put him to bed and crawled into her own berth she tried to cheer herself with the thought

that in less than twenty-four hours they would be in New York. Her people would all be at the station to meet her--she pictured their round unanxious faces pressing through the crowd. She only hoped they would not tell him too loudly that he was looking splendidly and would be all right in no time: the subtler sympathies developed by long contact with suffering were making her aware of a certain coarseness of texture in the family sensibilities.

Suddenly she thought she heard him call. She parted the curtains and listened. No, it was only a man snoring at the other end of the car. His snores had a greasy sound, as though they passed through tallow. She lay down and tried to sleep... Had she not heard him move? She started up trembling... The silence frightened her more than any sound. He might not be able to make her hear--he might be calling her now... What made her think of such things? It was merely the familiar tendency of an over-tired mind to fasten itself on the most intolerable chance within the range of its forebodings.... Putting her head out, she listened; but she could not distinguish his breathing from that of the other pairs of lungs about her. She longed to get up and look at him, but she knew the impulse was a mere vent for her restlessness, and the fear of disturbing him restrained her.... The regular movement of his curtain reassured her, she knew not why; she remembered that he had wished her a cheerful good-night; and the sheer inability to endure her fears a moment longer made her put them from her with an effort of her whole sound tired body. She turned on her side and slept.

She sat up stiffly, staring out at the dawn. The train was rushing through a region of bare hillocks huddled against a lifeless sky. It looked like the first day of creation. The air of the car was close, and she pushed up her window to let in the keen wind. Then she looked at her watch: it was seven o'clock, and soon the people about her would be stirring. She slipped into her clothes, smoothed her dishevelled hair and crept to the dressing-room. When she had washed her face and adjusted her dress she felt more hopeful. It was always a struggle for her not to be cheerful in the morning. Her cheeks burned deliciously under the coarse towel and the wet hair about her temples broke into strong upward tendrils. Every inch of her was full of life and elasticity. And in ten hours they would be at home!

She stepped to her husband's berth: it was time for him to take his early glass of milk. The window-shade was down, and in the dusk of

the curtained enclosure she could just see that he lay sideways, with his face away from her. She leaned over him and drew up the shade. As she did so she touched one of his hands. It felt cold....

She bent closer, laying her hand on his arm and calling him by name. He did not move. She spoke again more loudly; she grasped his shoulder and gently shook it. He lay motionless. She caught hold of his hand again: it slipped from her limply, like a dead thing. A dead thing? ... Her breath caught. She must see his face. She leaned forward, and hurriedly, shrinkingly, with a sickening reluctance of the flesh, laid her hands on his shoulders and turned him over. His head fell back; his face looked small and smooth; he gazed at her with steady eyes.

She remained motionless for a long time, holding him thus; and they looked at each other. Suddenly she shrank back: the longing to scream, to call out, to fly from him, had almost overpowered her. But a strong hand arrested her. Good God! If it were known that he was dead they would be put off the train at the next station--

In a terrifying flash of remembrance there arose before her a scene she had once witnessed in travelling, when a husband and wife, whose child had died in the train, had been thrust out at some chance station. She saw them standing on the platform with the child's body between them; she had never forgotten the dazed look with which they followed the receding train. And this was what would happen to her. Within the next hour she might find herself on the platform of some strange station, alone with her husband's body.... Anything but that! It was too horrible--She quivered like a creature at bay.

As she cowered there, she felt the train moving more slowly. It was coming then--they were approaching a station! She saw again the husband and wife standing on the lonely platform; and with a violent gesture she drew down the shade to hide her husband's face.

Feeling dizzy, she sank down on the edge of the berth, keeping away from his outstretched body, and pulling the curtains close, so that he and she were shut into a kind of sepulchral twilight. She tried to think. At all costs she must conceal the fact that he was dead. But how? Her mind refused to act: she could not plan, combine. She could think of no way but to sit there, clutching the curtains, all day long....

She heard the porter making up her bed; people were beginning to move about the car; the dressing-room door was being opened and

shut. She tried to rouse herself. At length with a supreme effort she rose to her feet, stepping into the aisle of the car and drawing the curtains tight behind her. She noticed that they still parted slightly with the motion of the car, and finding a pin in her dress she fastened them together. Now she was safe. She looked round and saw the porter. She fancied he was watching her.

«Ain't he awake yet?» he enquired.

«No,» she faltered.

«I got his milk all ready when he wants it. You know you told me to have it for him by seven.»

She nodded silently and crept into her seat.

At half-past eight the train reached Buffalo. By this time the other passengers were dressed and the berths had been folded back for the day. The porter, moving to and fro under his burden of sheets and pillows, glanced at her as he passed. At length he said: «Ain't he going to get up? You know we're ordered to make up the berths as early as we can.»

She turned cold with fear. They were just entering the station.

«Oh, not yet,» she stammered. «Not till he's had his milk. Won't you get it, please?»

«All right. Soon as we start again.»

When the train moved on he reappeared with the milk. She took it from him and sat vaguely looking at it: her brain moved slowly from one idea to another, as though they were stepping-stones set far apart across a whirling flood. At length she became aware that the porter still hovered expectantly.

«Will I give it to him?» he suggested.

«Oh, no,» she cried, rising. «He--he's asleep yet, I think--»

She waited till the porter had passed on; then she unpinning the curtains and slipped behind them. In the semi-obscurity her husband's face stared up at her like a marble mask with agate eyes. The eyes were dreadful. She put out her hand and drew down the lids. Then she remembered the glass of milk in her other hand: what was she to do with it? She thought of raising the window and throwing it out; but to do so she would have to lean across his body and bring her face close to his. She decided to drink the milk.

She returned to her seat with the empty glass and after a while the porter came back to get it.

«When'll I fold up his bed?» he asked.

«Oh, not now--not yet; he's ill--he's very ill. Can't you let him stay as he is? The doctor wants him to lie down as much as possible.»

He scratched his head. «Well, if he's really sick--»

He took the empty glass and walked away, explaining to the passengers that the party behind the curtains was too sick to get up just yet.

She found herself the centre of sympathetic eyes. A motherly woman with an intimate smile sat down beside her.

«I'm real sorry to hear your husband's sick. I've had a remarkable amount of sickness in my family and maybe I could assist you. Can I take a look at him?»

«Oh, no--no, please! He mustn't be disturbed.»

The lady accepted the rebuff indulgently.

«Well, it's just as you say, of course, but you don't look to me as if you'd had much experience in sickness and I'd have been glad to assist you. What do you generally do when your husband's taken this way?»

«I--I let him sleep.»

«Too much sleep ain't any too healthful either. Don't you give him any medicine?»

«Y-yes.»

«Don't you wake him to take it?»

«Yes.»

«When does he take the next dose?»

«Not for-two hours--»

The lady looked disappointed. «Well, if I was you I'd try giving it oftener. That's what I do with my folks.»

After that many faces seemed to press upon her. The passengers were on their way to the dining-car, and she was conscious that as they passed down the aisle they glanced curiously at the closed curtains. One lantern-jawed man with prominent eyes stood still and tried to shoot his projecting glance through the division between the folds. The freckled child, returning from breakfast, waylaid the passers with a buttery clutch, saying in a loud whisper, «He's sick;» and once the conductor came by, asking for tickets. She shrank into her corner and looked out of the window at the flying trees and houses, meaningless hieroglyphs of an endlessly unrolled papyrus.

Questions

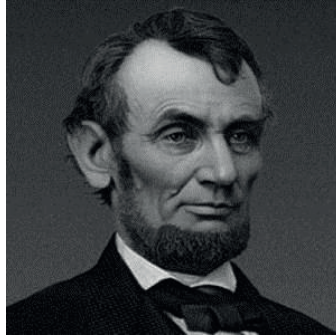
1. When did the story happen?
2. Whose had voice grown very weak within the last months?
3. Why did they move from their pretty house to Colorado?
4. Who reads the poem in the movie Dead Poets Society; Robin Williams or John Keating?
5. How did she feel when the doctors at last gave their consent to his going home!
6. At what time will they be in New York?
7. What was the time when she looked at her watch in the morning?
8. Why didn't she want the others know that her husband had died?
9. When did the train reach Buffalo?
10. What did the motherly woman offer to do the next morning?
11. What was the fat man dressed?
12. How often did the motherly lady remind her that her husband ought to have his drops?
13. Who went on murmuring: «I must pretend I don't know,»?
14. How much brandy did she swallow from her husband's flask?
15. What happened to her in the end?

Vocabulary

1. grudge /grʌdʒ/ - a strong feeling of anger
2. berth /bɜːθ/ - bed in a boat, train, etc
3. lucidity /luːˈsɪdɪ.ti/ - clearly expressed and easy to understand
4. petulant /ˈpet.jʊ l ə nt/ - easily annoyed and complaining in a rude way like a child
5. imperceptible /ˌɪm.pəˈsep.tɪ.bl/ - unable to be noticed or felt because of being very slight
6. estranged /ɪˈstreɪndʒd/ - If you are estranged from your family or friends then you have seriously argued with them and are no longer friendly with them
7. estrangement /ɪˈstreɪndʒ mənt/ - a period when you are estranged from someone
8. estranged /ɪˈstreɪndʒd/ - If you are estranged from your family or friends then you have seriously argued with them and are no longer friendly with them

9. arrears /ə'riəz/ - money that is owed and should already have been paid
10. whitewash /'waɪt wɒʃ/ - hiding the truth
11. leniently /'liːni əntli/ - softly; not as severe or strong in punishment or judgment
12. robust /rəʊ'bʌst/ - strong and healthy
13. rejoice /rɪ'dʒɔɪs/ - to feel or show great happiness about something
14. chafe /tʃeɪf/ - rub
15. resent /rɪ'zent/ - to feel angry because you make someone accept that you do not like
16. punctuate /'pʌŋk.tʃuː eɪt/ - to happen or cause something to happen repeatedly
17. dislodge /dɪ'slɒdʒ/ - to remove something or someone, especially by force
18. philanthropic /,fɪl.ən'θrɒp.ɪk/ - helping poor people, especially by giving them money
19. audibly /'ɔː dɪ.bli/ - able to be heard
20. pang /pæŋ/ - a sudden sharp feeling, especially of painful emotion
21. sheer /ʃɪər/ - complete; very great
22. outstretched /,aʊt'stretʃt/ - reaching out as far as possible
23. sepulchral /sɪ'pʌl kr ə l/ - suggesting death
24. conceal /kən'siːl/ - hide
25. dishevelled = disheveled /dɪ'ʃev. ə ld/ - very untidy
26. rouse /raʊz/ - to wake someone
27. ancied /'fæntsɪd/ - expected or thought likely to succeed
28. falter /'fɒltər/ - to lose strength or purpose and stop
29. to and fro - in one direction and then in the opposite direction
30. crumbs /krʌmz/ - an expression of surprise or worry
31. flask /flɑːsk/ - a special container that keeps drinks hot or cold
32. vague /veɪg/ - not clearly expressed
33. agate /'æg ət/ - a hard stone with strips of colour, used in jewellery
34. vividly /'vɪvɪdli/ - very clearly,
35. waxen /'wæks ə n/ - pale
36. brandy /'brændi/ - a strong alcoholic drink

SECOND INAUGURAL ADDRESS OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN



(Abraham Lincoln (February 12, 1809 to April 15, 1865) was the 16th president of the United States and is regarded as one of America's greatest heroes due to his role as savior of the Union and emancipator of the slaves. His rise from humble beginnings to achieving the highest office in the land is a remarkable story. He was suddenly and tragically assassinated at a time when his country needed him to complete the great task remaining before the nation. His eloquence of democracy and insistence that the Union was worth saving embody the ideals of self-government that all nations strive to achieve. Lincoln's distinctively human and humane personality and incredible impact on the nation has endowed him with an enduring legacy).

Not as well known as The Gettysburg Address, Abraham's Second Inaugural speech is a powerful document that should also be studied and considered deeply: «In great contests each party claims to act in accordance with the will of God. Both may be, and one must be wrong. God cannot be for, and against the same thing at the same time.»

Fellow-Countrymen:

At this second appearing to take the oath of the Presidential office there is less occasion for an extended address than there was at the first. Then a statement somewhat in detail of a course to be pursued seemed fitting and proper. Now, at the expiration of four years, during which public declarations have been constantly called forth on every point and phase of the great contest which still absorbs the attention and engrosses the energies of the nation, little that is new could be presented. The progress of our arms, upon which all else chiefly depends, is as well known to the public as to myself, and it is, I trust, reasonably satisfactory and encouraging to all. With high hope for the future, no prediction in regard to it is ventured.

On the occasion corresponding to this four years ago all thoughts were anxiously directed to an impending civil war. All dreaded it, all sought to avert it. While the inaugural address was being delivered from this place, devoted altogether to saving the Union without war, insurgent agents were in the city seeking to destroy it without war--seeking to dissolve the Union and divide effects by negotiation. Both parties deprecated war, but one of them would make war rather than let the nation survive, and the other would accept war rather than let it perish, and the war came.

One-eighth of the whole population were colored slaves, not distributed generally over the Union, but localized in the southern part of it. These slaves constituted a peculiar and powerful interest. All knew that this interest was somehow the cause of the war. To strengthen, perpetuate, and extend this interest was the object for which the insurgents would rend the Union even by war, while the Government claimed no right to do more than to restrict the territorial enlargement of it. Neither party expected for the war the magnitude or the duration which it has already attained. Neither anticipated that the cause of the conflict might cease with or even before the conflict itself should cease. Each looked for an easier triumph, and a result less fundamental and astounding. Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, and each invokes His aid against the other. It may seem strange that any men should dare to ask a just God's assistance in wringing their bread from the sweat of other men's faces, but let us judge not, that we be not judged. The prayers of both could not be answered. That of neither has been answered fully. The Almighty has His own purposes. «Woe unto the world because of offenses; for it must needs be that offenses come, but woe to that man by whom the offense cometh.» If we shall suppose that American slavery is one of those offenses which, in the providence of God, must needs come, but which, having continued through His appointed time, He now wills to remove, and that He gives to both North and South this terrible war as the woe due to those by whom the offense came, shall we discern therein any departure from those divine attributes which the believers in a living God always ascribe to Him? Fondly do we hope, fervently do we pray, that this mighty scourge of war may speedily pass away. Yet, if God wills that it continue until all the wealth piled by the bondsman's two hundred and fifty years of unrequited toil shall be sunk, and until every drop of blood drawn with the lash shall be paid by another drawn with the sword, as was said

three thousand years ago, so still it must be said «the judgments of the Lord are true and righteous altogether.»

With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.

Saturday, March 4, 1865

Abraham Lincoln

Questions

1. What did they altogether do to save the Union without war?
2. How many of the whole population were colored slaves?
3. Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, don't they?
4. What does the last paragraph mean?
5. When did speech take place?
6. Who gave this speech?
7. What was the person's job when he gave this speech?

Vocabulary

1. oath /əʊθ/ - a promise, especially that you will tell the truth in a law court
2. venture /'ven.tʃə r / - a new activity, which involves risk or uncertainty
3. dread /dred/ - to feel extremely worried
4. avert /ə'vɜ:t/ - to prevent something bad from happening
5. insurgent /ɪn'sɜ:.dʒənt/ - someone who is fighting against the government in their own country
6. woe /wəʊ/ (woes) great problems or troubles
7. fondly /'fɒnd.li/- in a way that shows love
8. inaugural /ɪ'no:.gju.rəl/ - the first speech; ex: The President's inaugural address to the nation.
9. borne /bɔ:n/ Past Participle of "To bear; (bear - (bore , borne or born)
10. cherish /'tʃer.ɪʃ/ - to love and care for someone or something that is important to you

ENGLISH IS A CRAZY LANGUAGE

By R. Lederer

English is the most widely spoken language in the history of our planet, used in some way by at least one out of every seven human beings around the globe. Half of the world's books are written in English, and the majority of international telephone calls are made in English. English is the language of over sixty percent of the world's radio programs, many of them beamed, ironically, by the Russians, who know that to win friends and influence nations, they're best off using English. More than seventy percent of international mail is written and addressed in English, and eighty percent of all computer text is stored in English. English has acquired the largest vocabulary of all the world's languages, perhaps as many as two million words, and has generated one of the noblest bodies of literature in the annals of the human race.

Nonetheless, it is now time to face the fact that English is a crazy language.

In the crazy English language, the blackbird hen is brown, blackboards can be blue or green, and blackberries are green and then red before they are ripe. Even if blackberries were really black and blueberries really blue, what are strawberries, cranberries, elderberries, huckleberries, raspberries, boysenberries, mulberries, and gooseberries supposed to look like?

To add to the insanity, there is no butter in buttermilk, no egg in eggplant, no grape in grapefruit, neither worms nor wood in wormwood, neither pine nor apple in pineapple, neither peas nor nuts in peanuts, and no ham in a hamburger. (In fact, if somebody invented a sandwich consisting of a ham patty in a bun, we would have a hard time finding a name for it.) To make matters worse, English muffins weren't invented in England, french fries in France, or danish pastries in Denmark. And we discover even more culinary madness in the revelations that sweetmeat is candy, while sweetbread, which isn't sweet, is made from meat.

In this unreliable English tongue, greyhounds aren't always grey (or gray); panda bears and koala bears aren't bears (they're marsupials); a woodchuck is a groundhog, which is not a hog; a horned toad is a lizard; glowworms are fireflies, but fireflies are not flies (they're beetles); ladybugs and lightning bugs are also beetles (and

to propagate, a significant proportion of ladybugs must be male); a guinea pig is neither a pig nor from Guinea (it's a South American rodent); and a titmouse is neither mammal nor mammaried.

Language is like the air we breathe. It's invisible, inescapable, indispensable, and we take it for granted. But when we take the time, step back, and listen to the sounds that escape from the holes in people's faces and explore the paradoxes and vagaries of English, we find that hot dogs can be cold, darkrooms can be lit, homework can be done in school, nightmares can take place in broad daylight, while morning sickness and daydreaming can take place at night, tomboys are girls, midwives can be men, hours – especially happy hours and rush hours – can last longer than sixty minutes, quicksand works very slowly, boxing rings are square, silverware can be made of plastic and tablecloths of paper, most telephones are dialed by being punched (or pushed?), and most bathrooms don't have any baths in them. In fact, a dog can go to the bathroom under a tree — no bath, no room; it's still going to the bathroom. And doesn't it seem at least a little bizarre that we go to the bathroom in order to go to the bathroom?

Why is it that a woman can man a station but a man can't woman one, that a man can father a movement but a woman can't mother one, and that a king rules a kingdom but a queen doesn't rule a queendom? How did all those Renaissance men reproduce when there don't seem to have been any Renaissance women?

A writer is someone who writes, and a stinger is something that stings. But fingers don't fing, grocers don't groce, hammers don't ham, and humdingers don't humding, if the plural of tooth is teeth, shouldn't the plural of booth be beeth? One goose, two geese – so one moose, two meese? One index, two indices – one Kleenex, two Kleenices? If people ring a bell today and rang a bell yesterday, why don't we say that they flang a ball? If they wrote a letter, perhaps they also bote their tongue. If the teacher taught, why isn't it also true that the preacher praught? Why is it that the sun shone yesterday while I shined my shoes, that I treaded water and then trod on soil, and that I flew out to see a World Series game in which my favorite player flied out?

If we conceive a conception and receive at a reception, why don't we grieve a greption and believe a beleption? If a horsehair mat is made from the hair of horses and a camel's hair brush from the hair of camels, from what is a mohair coal made? If a vegetarian eats vegetables, what does a humanitarian eat? If a firefighter fights fire, what does a freedom

fighter fight? If a weightlifter lifts weights, what does a shoplifter lift? If pro and con are opposites, is congress the opposite of progress?

Sometimes you have to believe that all English speakers should be committed to an asylum for the verbally insane. In what other language do people drive in a parkway and park in a driveway? In what other language do people recite at a play and play at a recital? In what other language do privates eat in the general mess and generals eat in the private mess? In what other language do men gel hernias and women get hysterectomies? In what other language do people ship by truck and send cargo by ship? In what other language can your nose run and your feet smell?

How can a slim chance and a fat chance be the same, “what’s going on?” and “what’s coming off?” be the same, and a bad licking and a good licking be the same, while a wise man and a wise guy are opposites? How can sharp speech and blunt speech be the same and quite a lot and quite a few the same, while overlook and oversee are opposites? How can the weather be hot as hell one day and cold as hell the next?

If button and unbutton and tie and untie are opposites, why are loosen and unloosen and ravel and unravel the same? If bad is the opposite of good, hard the opposite of soft, and up the opposite of down, why are badly and goodly, hardly and softly, and upright and downright not opposing pairs? If harmless actions are the opposite of harmful actions, why are shameless and shameful behavior the same and pricey objects less expensive than priceless ones? If appropriate and inappropriate remarks and passable and impassable mountain trails are opposites, why are flammable and inflammable materials, heritable and ininheritable property, and passive and impassive people the same and valuable objects less treasured than invaluable ones? If uplift is the same as lift up, why are upset and set up opposite in meaning? Why are pertinent and impertinent, canny and uncanny, and famous and infamous neither opposites nor the same? How can raise and raze and reckless and wreckless be opposites when each pair contains the same sound?

Why is it that when the sun or the moon or the stars are out, they are visible, but when the lights are out, they are invisible, and that when I wind up my watch, I start it, but when I wind up this essay, I shall end it?

English is a crazy language.

How can expressions like “I’m mad about my flat,” “No football coaches allowed,” and “I’ll come by in the morning and knock you up” convey such different messages in two countries that purport to speak English?

How can it be easier to assent than to dissent but harder to ascend than to descend? Why is it that a man with hair on his head has more hair than a man with hairs on his head; that if you decide to be bad forever, you choose to be bad for good; and that if you choose to wear only your left shoe, then your left one is right and your right one is left? Right?

Small wonder that we English users are constantly standing meaning on its head. Let’s look at a number of familiar English words and phrases that turn out to mean the opposite of or something very different from what we think they mean:

I could care less. I couldn’t care less is the clearer, more accurate version. Why do so many people delete the negative from this statement? Because they are afraid that the n’t... less combination will make for a double negative, which is a no-no.

I really miss not seeing you. Whenever people say this to me. I feel like saying, “All right, I’ll leave!” Here speakers throw in a gratuitous negative, not, even though I really miss seeing you is what they want to say.

The movie kept me literally glued to my seat. The chances of our buttocks being literally epoxied to a seat are about as small as the chances of our literally rolling in the aisles while watching a funny movie or literally drowning in tears while watching a sad one. We actually mean The movie kept me figuratively glued to my seat – but who needs figuratively, anyway? If we must resort to a cliché, The movie kept me glued to my seat is the clearest, most sensible way of expressing our emotions.

A non-slop flight Never get on one of those. You’ll never get down.

A near miss. A near miss is, in reality, a collision. A close call is actually a near hit.

My idea fell between the cracks. If something fell between the cracks, didn’t it land smack on the planks or the concrete? Shouldn’t that be My idea fell into the cracks (or between the boards)?

I’ll follow you to the ends of the earth. Let the word go forward to the four corners of the earth that ever since Columbus we have known that the earth doesn’t have any ends.

The first century b.c. These hundred years occurred much longer ago than people imagine. What we call the first century b.c. was, in fact, the last century b.c.

Daylight savings time. Not a single second of daylight is saved by this ploy.

A hot-water heater. Why heat hot water?

A hot cup of coffee. Who cares if the cup is hot? Surely we mean a cup of hot coffee.

A one-night stand. So who's standing?

Doughnut holes. Aren't these little treats really doughnut balls? The holes are what's left in the original doughnut. (And if a candy cane is shaped like a cane, why isn't a doughnut shaped like a nut?)

I want to have my cake and eat it, too. Shouldn't this timeworn cliché be I want to eat my cake and have it, too? Isn't the logical sequence that one hopes to eat the cake and then still possess it?

The announcement was made by a nameless official. Just about everyone has a name, even officials. Surely what is meant is The announcement was made by an unnamed official.

Preplan, preboard, preheat and prerecord. Aren't people who do such things simply planning, boarding, heating, and recording? Who needs the pre-tentious prefix?

Put on your shoes and socks. This is an exceedingly difficult maneuver. Most of us put on our socks first, then our shoes.

A hit-and-run play. If you know your baseball, you know that the sequence constitutes a run-and-hit play.

The bus goes back and forth between the terminal and the airport. Again we find mass confusion about the order of events. You have to go forth before you can go back.

Underwater and underground. Things that we claim are underwater and underground are obviously surrounded by, not under, the water and ground.

I got caught in one of the biggest traffic bottlenecks of the year. The bigger the bottleneck, the more freely the contents of the bottle flows through it. To be true to the metaphor, we should say, I got caught in one of the smallest bottlenecks of the year.

I lucked out. To luck out sounds as if you're out of luck. Don't you mean I lucked in?

Because we speakers and writers of English seem to have our heads screwed on backward, we constantly misperceive our bodies, often saying just the opposite of what we mean:

Watch your head. I keep seeing this sign on low doorways, but I haven't figured out how to follow the instructions. Trying to watch your head is like trying to bite your teeth.

They're head over heels in love. That's nice, but we do almost everything head over heels. If we are trying to create an image of people doing cartwheels and somersaults, why don't we say, They're heels over head in love?

Put your best foot forward. Now, let's see ... We have a good foot, a better foot, but we don't have a third – and best – foot. It's our better foot that we want to put forward. "Put your best foot forward" is akin to "May the best team win." Usually there are only two teams in the contest.

Keep a stiff upper lip. When we are disappointed or afraid, which lip do we try to control? The tower lip, of course, is the one we are trying to keep from quivering.

I'm speaking tongue in cheek. So how can anyone understand you?

They do things behind my back. You want they should do things in front of your back?

They did it ass backwards. What's wrong with that? How else are they supposed to do it?

English is weird.

In the rigid expressions that wear tonal grooves in the record of our language, beck can appear only with call, cranny with nook, hue with cry, main with might, fettle only with fine, aback with taken, caboodle with kit, and spic and span only with each other. Why must all shrifts be short, all lucre filthy, all bystanders innocent, and all bedfellows strange? I'm convinced that some shrifts are lengthy and that some lucre is squeaky clean, and I've certainly met guilty bystanders and perfectly normal bedfellows.

Why is it that only swoops are fell? Sure, the verbivorous William Shakespeare invented the expression "one fell swoop", but why can't strokes, swings, acts, and the like also be fell? Why are we allowed to vent our spleens but never our kidneys or livers? Why must it be only our minds that are boggled, and never our eyes or our hearts? Why can't eyes and jars be ajar, as well as doors? Why must aspersions always be cast and never hurled or lobbed?

Doesn't it seem just a little loopy that we can make amends but never just one amend; that no matter how carefully we comb through

the annals of history, we can never discover just one annal; that we can never pull a shenanigan, be in a doldrum, or get a jitter, a willy, a delirium tremen, a jimjam, or a heebie-jeebie; and that. sifting through the wreckage of a disaster, we can never find just one smithereen? Indeed, this whole business of plurals that don't have matching singulars reminds me to ask this burning linguistic question, one that has puzzled scholars for decades: If you have a bunch of odds and ends and you get rid of or sell off all but one of them, what do you call that doohickey with which you're left?

What do you make of the fact that we can talk about certain things and ideas only when they are absent? Once they appear, our blessed English doesn't allow us to describe them. Have you ever seen a horseful carriage or a strapful gown? Have you ever run into someone who was combobulated, sheveled, grunted, chalant, plussed, ruly, gainly, maculate, pecunious, or peccable? Have you ever met a sung hero or experienced requited love? I know people who are no spring chickens, but where, pray tell, are the people who are spring chickens? Where are the people who actually would hurt a fly? All the time I meet people who are great shakes, who can cut the mustard, who can fight City Hall, who are my cup of tea, and whom I would touch with a ten-foot pole, but I cannot talk about them in English – and that is a laughing matter.

If the truth be told, all languages are a little crazy. As Walt Whitman might proclaim, they contradict themselves. That's because language is invented, not discovered, by boys and girls and men and women, not computers. As such, language reflects the creativity and fearful asymmetry of the human race, which, of course, isn't really a race at all. That's why six, seven, eight, and nine change to sixty, seventy, eighty, and ninety, but two, three, four, and five do not become twoty, threety, fourty, and fivety. That's why we can turn lights off and on but not out and in. That's why we wear a pair of pants but, except on very cold days, never a pair of shirts. That's why we can open up the floor, climb the walls, raise the roof, pick up the house, and bring down the house.

In his essay "The Awful German Language", Mark Twain spoofs the confusion engendered by German gender by translating literally from a conversation in a German Sunday school book: "Gretchen. Wilhelm, where is the turnip? Wilhelm. She has gone to the kitchen. Gretchen. Where is the accomplished and beautiful English maiden?

Wilhelm. It has gone to the opera.” Twain continues: “A tree is male, its buds are female, its leaves are neuter; horses are sexless, dogs are male, cats are female – tomcats included.”

Still, you have to marvel at the unique lunacy of the English language, in which your house can simultaneously burn up and burn down, in which you fill in a form by filling out a form, in which you add up a column of figures by adding them down, in which your alarm clock goes off by going on, in which you are inoculated for measles by being inoculated against measles, and in which you first chop a tree down – and then you chop it up.

1. Match the words and their definitions.

loopy	– claiming or demanding a position of distinction or merit, especially when
beam	– unjustified
pretentious	– marked by a lack of flexibility, rigorous and exacting
insanity	– a seemingly contradictory statement
rigid	– that may nonetheless be true
inescapable	– extreme foolishness, folly
paradox	– to emit or transmit ineluctable, unavoidable offbeat, crazy

2. Questionarries

1. What accounts for the fact that has English become the most widely spoken languages in the world? In what spheres is English applicable on an international level?

2. What words can be “misleading” in terms of their form? Explain the essence of this phenomenon.

3. The author gives a lot of examples of inconsistent, illogical usage of words. Can you recall any?

4. Why does the author say that “we English users are constantly standing meaning on its head”?

5. What plural forms do not have corresponding singular forms? What word/form would you use if you were to express the idea of singularity?

6. Which words can be used only with a negative prefix?

Task 1. Check your knowledge of English by doing the following quiz. When you are through and get the correct answers, say which words seemed the most confusable ones. The meaning of which unfamiliar words did you manage to figure out correctly? What helped you guess their actual meaning?

Confusable English

Here is a small quiz that presents more words that are not what they seem. Beware and be wary as you choose the correct definition for each entry. Avoid taking a simplistic (there's another one!) approach.

1. antebellum
a) against women; b) against war; c) after the war; d) before the war.
2. apiary
a) school for mimics; b) place where apes are kept; c) place where bees are kept; d) cupboard for peas.
3. aquiline
a) resembling an eagle; b) relating to water; c) relating to synchronized swimming; d) resembling a porcupine.
4. cupidity
a) strong desire for wealth; b) strong desire for love; c) strong desire for amusement parks; d) obtuseness.
5. disinterested
a) lacking a bank account; b) unbiased; c) bored; d) lacking rest.
6. enormity
a) great wickedness; b) great size; c) normal state; d) cowardice.
7. forestress
a) ancient hair style; b) female forester; c) dread anticipation; d) emphasis on first part of word.
8. friable
a) easily crumbled; b) easily fried; c) unhealthy; d) relating to holy orders.
9. herpetology
the study of a) herbs; b) herpes; c) female pets; d) reptiles.
10. hippophobia
the fear of a) hippopotami; b) horses; c) getting fat; d) hippies.
11. infinitesimal
a) very small; b) very large; c) relating to intestines; d) hesitant.

12. inflammable
a) calm; b) incredulous; c) not easily set on fire; d) easily set on fire.
13. ingenuous
a) insincere; b) innocent; c) clever; d) mentally dull.
14. meretricious
a) falsely attractive; b) worthy; c) good tasting; d) diseased.
15. presently
a) generous with gifts; b) now; c) soon; d) presidentially.
16. prosody
the study of a) drama; b) music; c) prose; d) versification.
17. restive
a) serene; b) festive; c) fidgety; d) pensive.
18. risible
a) disposed to laugh; b) easily lifted; c) fertile; d) relating to dawn.
19. toothsome
a) displaying prominent teeth; b) missing teeth; c) palatable; d) serrated.
20. votary
a) democratic country; b) enthusiast; c) electoral college; d) revolving tool.

Task 2. Read the text and give an extended answer to the following questions. How can it happen that a single word develops two polar meanings? Are there any Janus-faced words in Russian? Can they become a source of confusion and misperception or is the meaning always clear from the context?

Janus-Faced English

In the year 1666 a great fire swept through London and destroyed more than half the city, including three quarters of St Paul's Cathedral. Sir Christopher Wren, the original designer of the Cathedral and perhaps the finest architect of all time, was commissioned to rebuild the great edifice. He began in 1675 and finished in 1710, a remarkably short period of time for such a task. When the magnificent edifice was completed, Queen Anne, the reigning monarch, visited the Cathedral and told Wren that his work was "awful, artificial, and amusing". Sir Christopher, so the story goes, was delighted with the royal compliment, be-cause in those days awful meant "full of awe, awe-inspiring", artificial meant "artistic", and amusing, from the muses, meant "amazing".

That was three hundred years ago. Today, the older, tottering meanings of awful, artificial, and amusing have virtually disappeared from popular use. Indeed, the general rule of language is that when a single word develops two polar meanings, one will become obsolete. Occasionally, though, two diametrically opposed meanings of the same English word survive, and the technical term for these schizophrenics is contronym. More popularly, they are known as Janus-faced words because the Greek god Janus had two faces that looked in opposite directions.

Here's a little finger exercise. Remember that I'm the teacher, so you must try to do what I ask. Make a circle with the fingers on your left hand by touching the tip of your index finger to the tip of your thumb. Now poke your head through that circle.

If you unsuccessfully tried to fit your head through me small digital circle, you (and almost any reader) thought that the phrase "poke your head" meant that your head was the poker. But if you raised your left hand with the circle of fingers up close to your forehead and poked your right index finger through that circle until it touched your forehead, you realized that the phrase "poke your head" has a second, and opposite, meaning: that the head is the pokee.

Here are two sentences that will solidify your understanding of how Janus-faced words work:

"The moon is **VISIBLE** tonight."

"The lights in the old house are always **INVISIBLE**."

Although the two capitalized words are opposite in meaning, both can be replaced by the same word – out. When the moon or sun or stars are out, they are visible. When the lights are out, they are invisible.

Here are some contronymic sentences that show how words wander wondrously and testify to the fact that nothing in the English language is absolute:

with. alongside; against: a. England fought with France against Germany, b. England fought with France;

clip. fasten; separate: a. Clip the coupon to the newspaper. b. Clip the coupon from the newspaper;

fast. firmly in one place; rapidly from one place to another: a. The pegs held the tent fast. b. She ran fast;

bolt. to secure in place; to dart away: a. I'll bolt the door. Did you see the horse bolt?;

trim. add things to; cut away: a. Let's trim the Christmas tree. b. Let's trim the hedge;

dust. remove material from; spread material on: a. Three times a week they dust the floor. b. Three times each season they dust the crops;

weather. withstand; wear away: a. Strong ships weather storms. b. Wind can weather rocks;

handicap. advantage, disadvantage: a. What's your handicap in golf? b. His lack of education is a handicap;

commencement. beginning; conclusion: a. Beautiful weather marked the commencement of spring. b. She won an award at her high school commencement;

bold up. support; hinder: a. Please hold up the sagging branch. b. Accidents hold up the flow of traffic;

keep up. continue to fail; continue to stay up: a. The farmers hope that the rain will keep up. b. Damocles hoped that the sword above his head would keep up;

left. departed from; remaining: a. Ten people left the room. b. Five people were left in the room;

dress. put items on; remove items from: a. Let's dress for the ball. b. Let's dress the chicken for cooking;

temper. soften; strengthen: a. You must temper your anger with reason. b. Factories temper steel with additives;

cleave. separate; adhere firmly, a. A strong blow will cleave a plank in two. b. Bits of metal cleave to a magnet;

strike. secure in place; remove: a. Use a firm grip to strike the nail. b. When the show is over, we'll strike the set;

give out. produce; stop producing: a. A good furnace will give out enough energy to heat the house. b. A broken furnace will often give out;

sanction. give approval of; censure: a. The plans to sanction the event. b. Should our country impose a new sanction on Libya?;

screen. view; hide from view: a. Tonight the critics will screen the film. b. Defensemen mustn't screen the puck;

oversight. careful supervision; neglect: a. The foreman was responsible for the oversight of the project. b. The foreman's oversight ruined the success of the project;

qualified. competent, limited: a. The candidate for the job was fully qualified. b. The dance was a qualified success;

moot. debatable; not worthy of debate: a. Capital punishment is a moot point. b. That the earth revolves around the sun is a moot point;

certain. definite; difficult to specify: a. I am certain about what I want in life. b. I have a certain feeling about the plan;

mortal. deadly, subject to death: a. The knight delivered a mortal blow. b. All humans are mortal;

buckle. fasten together; fall apart: a. Safe drivers buckle their seat belts. b. Unsafe buildings buckle at the slightest tremor of the earth;

trip. to stumble; to move gracefully: a. Don't trip on the curb. b. Let's trip the light fantastic;

put out. generate; extinguish: a. The candle put out enough light for us to see. b. Before I went to bed, I put out the candle;

unbending. rigid; relaxing: a. On the job Smith is completely unbending. b. Relaxing on the beach is a good way of unbending;

wear. endure through use; decay through use; a. This suit will wear like iron. b. Water can cause mountains to wear;

scan. examine carefully, glance at hastily: a. I scan the poem. b. Each day, I scan the want ads;

fix. restore; remove part of: a. It's time to fix the fence. b. It's time to fix the bull;

seeded. with seeds; without seeds: a. The rain nourished the seeded field. b. Would you like some seeded raisins?;

critical. opposed; essential to: a. Joanne is critical of our effort. b. Joanne is critical to our effort;

better. admire more; be suspicious of: a. I think better of the first proposal than the second. b. If I were you, I'd think better of that proposal;

take. obtain; offer a. Professional photographers take good pictures. b. Professional models take good pictures;

impregnable. invulnerable to penetration; able to be impregnated: a. The castle was so strongly built that it was impregnable. b. Treatments exist for making a childless woman more impregnable;

below par. excellent; poor: a. Her below par score won the golf tournament. b. I'm disappointed in your below par performance on the spelling test;

down hill. adverse; easy: a. When the source of capital dried up, the fortunes of the corporation went down hill. b. After you switch to diet drinks, it will be all down hill for your weight-loss program;

wind up. start; end: a. I have to wind up my watch. b. Now I have to wind up this discussion of curious and contrary contronyms.

Task 3. Read the text and spot animal idioms. In what situations would their usage be appropriate? How many idioms could you use in e.g. a description of a person without making it sound unnatural? Describe a person you know in five sentences using 5 animal idioms, then choose the best description among the students in your class.

A Visit to the Language Zoo

Many children's magazines feature picture puzzles in which the young readers are asked to identify a number of hidden animals. In a cloud may lurk a cow, in the leaves of a tree may be concealed a fish, and on the side of a house may be soaring an eagle. The English language is like those children's pictures. Take a gander at what follows, and you will discover almost three hundred creatures from the animal world hidden in the sentences, a veritable menagerie of zoological metaphors. (Did you catch one of them in the last sentence?)

Human beings, proclaims one dictionary, are distinguished from the other animals "by a notable development of brain with a resultant capacity for speech and abstract thinking". Perhaps so, but how truly different is our species from our fellow organisms with whom we share the planet?

I mean holy cow, holy cats, and holy mackerel – a little bird told me that the human race is filled with congressional hawks and doves who fight like cats and dogs 'til the cows come home, Wall Street bulls and bears who make a beeline for the goose that lays the golden egg, cold fish and hotdoggers, early birds and night owls, lone wolves and social butterflies, young lions and old crows, and lame ducks, sitting ducks, and dead ducks.

Some people are horny studs on the prowl for other party animals, strutting peacocks who preen and fish for compliments, clotheshorses who put on the dog with their turtlenecks and hush puppies, young bucks and ponytailed foxy chicks in puppy love who want to get hitched, or cool cats and kittenish lovebirds who avoid stag parties to bill and coo and pet and paw each other in their love nests.

Other people have a whale of an appetite that compels them to eat like pigs (not birds), drink like fish, stuff themselves to the gills, hog the lion's share, and wolf their elephantine portions until they become plump as partridges. Still others are batty, squirrely, bug-eyed, cod-eyed cuckoos who are mad as march hares and look like something the cat dragged in; crazy as coots, loons, a bedbugs; and who come at us

like bats out of hell with their monkeyshines and drive us buggy with their horsing around.

As we continue to separate the sheep from the goats and to pigeonhole the “human” race, we encounter catnapping, slothful sluggards; harebrained jackasses who, like fish out of water, doggedly think at a snail’s pace; dumb bunnies and dumb clucks who run around like chickens with their heads cut off; birdbrained dodos who are easily gulled, buffaloed, and outfoxed; asinine silly geese who lay an egg whenever, like monkey-see-monkey-do, they parrot and ape every turkey they see; clumsy oxen who are bulls in china shops; and top dogs on their high horses, big fish in small ponds, and cocky bullies high up in the pecking order who rule the roost and never work for chicken feed.

Leapin’ lizards, we can scarcely get through a day without meeting crestfallen, pussyfooting chickens who stick their heads in the sand; henpecked underdogs who get goose pimples and butterflies and turn tail; scared rabbits who play possum and cry crocodile tears before they go belly up; spineless jellyfish who clam up with a frog in the throat whenever the cat gets their tongue; mousy worms who quail and flounder and then, quiet as mice, slink off and then return to the fold with their tails between their legs; and shrimp pipsqueaks who fawn like toadies until you want to croak.

Let’s face it. It’s a dog-eat-dog world we live in. But doggone it, without beating a dead horse, I do not wish to duck or leapfrog over this subject. It’s time to fish or cut bait, to take the bull by the horns, kill two birds with one stone, and, before everything goes to the dogs and we’ve got a tiger by the tail, to give you a bird’s-eye view of the animals hiding in our language.

Dog my cats! It’s a bear of a task to avoid meeting catty, shrewish, bitchy vixens with bees in their bonnets whose pet peeve and sacred cow is that all men are swine and chauvinist pigs and in their doghouse. Other brutes who get your goat and ruffle your feathers are antsy, backbiting, crabby, pigheaded old buzzards, coots, and goats who are no spring chickens, who are stubborn as mules, and who grouse, bug, badger, dog, and hound you like squawking, droning, waspish gadflies that stir up a hornets’ nest and make a mountain out of a molehill.

And speaking of beastly characters that stick in your craw, watch out for the parasites, bloodsuckers, sponges, and leeches who worm their way into your consciousness and make you their scapegoats; the rat finks and stool pigeons who ferret out your deepest secrets and then

squeal on you, let the cat out of the bag, and fly the coop without so much as a “Tough turkey. See you later, alligator”; the snakes-in-the-grass who come out of the woodwork, open a can of worms, and then, before you smell a rat, throw you a red herring; the serpentine quacks who make you their gullible guinea pig and cat’s-paw; the lowdown curs and dirty dogs who sling the bull, give you a bum steer, and send you on a wild goose chase barking up the wrong tree on a wing and a prayer; the card sharks who hawk their fishy games, monkey with your nest egg, put the sting on you, and then fleece you; the vultures who hang like albatrosses around your neck, who live high on the hog, who feather their own nests and then – the straw that breaks the camel’s back – crow about it looking like the cat that swallowed the canary; the black sheep who play cat and mouse and then cook your goose and make a monkey out of you with their shaggy dog stories before they hightail it out of there; and the lousy varmints, pole-cats, skunks, and eels who sell you a white elephant or a pig in a poke and, when the worm turns and you discover the fly in the ointment, weasel their way out of the deal. It’s a real jungle out there, just one unbridled rat race; in fact, it’s for the birds.

But let’s talk turkey and horse sense. Don’t we go a tad ape and hog wild over the bright-eyed and bushy-tailed eager beavers who always go whole hog to hit the bull’s-eye; the eagle-eyed tigers who are always loaded for bear; and the ducky, loosey-goosey rare birds who are wise as owls and happy as larks and clams? Lucky dogs like these are the cat’s pajamas and the cat’s meow, worthy of being lionized. From the time they’re knee-high to a grasshopper, they’re in the catbird seat and the world is their oyster.

So before you buzz off, I hope you’ll agree that this exhibit of animal metaphors has been no fluke, no hogwash, no humbug. I really give a hoot about the animals hiding in our English language, so, for my swan song. I want you to know that, straight from the horse’s mouth, this has been no dog-and-pony show and no cock-and-bull story.

It really is a zoo out there.

Task 4. This time, spot food idioms and explain whether they are commonly used in English or not. Make a list of English food idioms, classify them and try to make a similar list of food idioms in Russian. Was it an easy task for you to recall food idioms in your native language? What accounts for this fact?

You Said a Mouthful

Now that you have uncovered the hidden herds of animals, flocks of birds, swarms of insects, and universities of fish that metaphorically run, fly, creep, and swim through our English language, it's lime to nibble on another spicy, meaty, juicy honey of a topic that I know you'll want to savor and relish. Feast your eyes now on the veritable potpourri of mushrooming food expressions that grace the table of our English language and season our tongue. As we chew the fat about the food-filled phrases that are packed like sardines and sandwiched into our everyday conversations, I'll sweeten the pot with some tidbits of food for thought guaranteed to whet your appetite.

I know what's eating you. I've heard through the grapevine that you don't give a fig because you think I'm nutty as a fruitcake; that you're fed up with me for biting off more than I can chew; that you want me to drop this subject like a hot potato because I'm a spoiled rotten weenie; and that you're giving me the raspberry for asking you to swallow a cheesy, corny, mushy, saccharine, seedy, soupy, sugarcoated, syrupy topic that just isn't your cup of tea.

I understand that you're beet red with anger that I'm feeding you a bunch of baloney, garbage, and tripe; that I've rubbed salt in your wounds by making you ruminate on a potboiler that's no more than a tempest in a teapot; that I've upset your apple cart by rehashing an old chestnut that's just pie in the sky and won't amount to a hill of beans; that you want to chew me out for putting words in your mouth; that you're boiling and simmering because you think I'm a candy-assed apple polisher who's out to egg you on.

But nuts to all that. That's the way the cookie crumbles. Eat your heart out and stop crying in your beer. I'm going to stop mincing words and start cooking with gas, take my idea off the back burner and bring home the bacon without hamming it up. No matter how you slice it, this fruitful, tasteful topic is the greatest thing since sliced bread, the icing on the cake. Rather than crying over spilt milk and leaping out of me frying pan and into the fire, I'm going to put all my eggs into one basket, take potluck, and spill the beans. I'm cool as a cucumber and confident that this crackerjack, peachy-keen, vintage feast that I've cooked up will have you eating out of the palm of my hand.

I don't wish to become embroiled in a rhubarb, but beefing and stewing sound like sour grapes from a tough nut to crack – kind of like the pot calling the kettle black. But if you've digested the spoonfed

culinary metaphors up to this point in this meal-and-potatoes chapter, the rest will be gravy, duck soup, a piece of cake, and easy as pie – just like taking candy from a baby.

Just think of the various people we meet every day. Some have taste. Others we take with a grain of salt. Some drive us bananas and crackers. Still others are absolutely out to lunch:

- * the young sprouts and broths of lads who feel their oats and are full of beans;

- * the sally, crusty oldsters who are wrinkled as prunes and live to a ripe old age well beyond their salad days;

- * the peppery smart cookies (no mere eggheads, they) who use their beans and noodles to cut the mustard;

- * the half-baked meat heads, the flaky couch potatoes, and the pudding-headed vegetables who drive us nuts with their slow-as-molasses peabrain and who gum up the works and are always in a pickle, a jam, hot water, the soup, or a fine kettle of fish;

- * the unsavory, crummy, hard-boiled, ham-fisted rotten apples with their cauliflower ears, who can cream us, beat the stuffing out of us, make us into mincemeat and hamburger, and knock us ass over teakettle and flatter than a pancake;

- * the mealymouthed marshmallows, Milquetoasts, milksops, half-pints, and cream puffs who walk on egg-shells and whose knees turn to jelly as they gingerly waffle and fudge on every issue to see which side their bread is buttered on;

- * the carrot-topped, pizza-faced string beans and bean poles who, with their lumpy Adam's apples, are long drinks of water;

- * the top bananas, big cheeses, and big breadwinners who ride the gravy train by making a lot of lettuce and dough and who never work for peanuts or small potatoes;

- * the honeys, tomatoes, dumplings, cheesecakes, and sweetie pies with their peaches-and-cream complexions, strawberry blond hair, almond eyes, and cherry lips;

- * the saucy tarts who wiggle their melons and buns and fritter away their time buttering up their meal tickets and milking their sugar daddies dry;

- * the salt-of-the-earth good eggs who take the cake, know their onions, make life a bowl of cherries, and become the apples of our eye and the toasts of the town.

Hot dog! I hope you're pleased as punch that this souped-up topic is a plum, not a lemon: the berries, not the pits. The proof of

the pudding is in the eating, and this cream of the crop of palate-pleasing food figures is bound to sell like hotcakes. I'm no glutton for punishment for all the tea in China, but, if I'm wrong, I'll eat crow and humble pie. I don't wish to take the words right out of your mouth, but, in a nutshell, it all boils down to the fact that every day we truly eat our words.

Task 5. Read the text. What does Farmer Pluribus suggest in order to improve and simplify the English language? See how many incorrect plural forms you can identify. Explain how they are formed and give the correct variants of the plural forms. Which of them are commonly used nowadays and which ones have become obsolete?

Foxen in the Henhice

Recently I undertook an extensive study of American dialects, and a friend told me about a farmer named Eben Pluribus who spoke a most unusual kind of English. So I went to visit Farmer Pluribus, and here is a transcript of our interview:

"Mr. Pluribus. I hear that you've had some trouble on the farm."

"Well, young fella, times were hard for a spell. Almost every night them danged foxen were raiding my henhice."

"Excuse me, sir," I interjected. "Don't you mean foxes?"

"Nope, I don't," Pluribus replied. "I use oxen to plow my fields, so it's foxen that I'm trying to get rid of."

"I see. But what are henhice?" I asked.

"Easy. One mouse, two mice; one henhouse, two henhice. You must be one of them city slickers, but surely you know that henhice are what them birds live in that, when they're little critters, they utter all them peep."

"I think I'm beginning to understand you, Mr. Pluribus. But don't you mean peeps?"

"Nope, I mean peep. More than one sheep is a flock of sheep, and more than one peep is a bunch of peep. What do you think I am, one of them old ceet?"

"I haven't meant to insult you, sir," I gulped. "But I can't quite make out what you're saying."

"Then you must be a touch slow in the head," Farmer Pluribus shot back. "One foot, two feet; one coot, Iwo ceet. I'm just trying to easify the English language, so I make all regular plural nouns irregular. Once they're all irregular, then it's just the same like they're

all regular.” “Makes perfect sense to me,” I mumbled. “Good boy,” said Pluribus, and a gleam came into his eyes. “Now, as I was trying to explain, them pesky foxen made such a fuss that all the meese and lynges have gone north.”

“Aha!” I shouted. “You’re talking about those big antlered animals, aren’t you? One goose, two geese; one moose, a herd of meese. And lynges is truly elegant – one sphinx, a row of sphinges: one lynx, a litter of lynges.”

“You’re a smart fella, sonny,” smiled Pluribus. “You see, I used to think that my cose might scare away them foxen, but the cose were too danged busy chasing rose.”

“Oh, oh. You’ve lost me again,” I lamented. “What are cose and rose?”

“Guess you ain’t so smart after all,” Pluribus sneered.

“If those is the plural of that, then cose and rose got to be the plurals of cat and rat.”

“Sorry that I’m so thick, but I’m really not one of those people who talk through their hose,” I apologized, picking up Pluribus’s cue. “Could you please tell me what happened to the foxen in your henhice?”

“I’d be pleased to,” answered Pluribus. “What happened was that my brave wife, Una, grabbed one of them frying pen and took off after them foxen.”

I wondered for a moment what frying pen were and soon realized that because the plural of man is men, the plural of pan had to be pen.

“Well,” Pluribus went right on talking, “the missus wasn’t able to catch them foxen so she went back to the kitchen and began throwing dish and some freshly made pice at them critters.”

That part of the story stumped me for a time, until I reasoned that a school of fish is made up of fish and more than one die make a roll of dice so that Una Pluribus must have grabbed a stack of dishes and pies.

Pluribus never stopped. “Them dish and pice sure scarified them foxen, and the pests have never come back. In fact, the rest of the village heard about what my wife did, and they were so proud that they sent the town band out to the farm to serenade her with tubae, harmonicae, accordia, fives, and dra.”

“Hold up!” I gasped. “Give me a minute to figure out those musical instruments. The plural of formula is formulae, so the plurals of tuba and harmonica must be tubae and harmanicae. And the plurals of

phenomenon and criterion are phenomena and criteria, so the plural of accordion must be accordia.”

“You must be one of them genii,” Pluribus exclaimed. “Maybe,” I blushed. “One cactus, two cacti; one alumnus, an association of alumni. So one genius, a seminar of genii. But let me get back to those instruments. The plurals of life and wife are lives and wives, so the plural of fife must be fives. And the plural of medium is media, so the plural of drum must be dra. Whew! That last one was tough.”

“Good boy, sonny. Well, my wife done such a good job of chasing away them foxen that the town newspaper printed up a story and ran a couple of photographim of her holding them pen, dish, and pice.”

My brain was now spinning in high gear, so it took me but an instant to realize that Farmer Pluribus had regularized one of the most exotic plurals in the English language – seraph, seraphim; so photograph, photographim. I could imagine all those Pluribi bathing in their bathtubim, as in cherub, cherubim; bathtub, bathtubim.

“Well,” crowed Pluribus. “I was mighty pleased that ererybody was so nice to the missus, but that ain’t no surprise since folks in these here parts show a lot of respect for their methren.”

“Brother, brethren; mother, methren.” I rejoined. “That thought makes me want to cry. Have you any boxen of Kleenices here?”

“Sure do, young fella. And I’m tickled pink that you’ve caught on to the way I’ve easified the English language. One index, two indices and one appendix, two appendices. So one Kleenex, two Kleenices. Makes things simpler, don’t it?”

I was so grateful to Farmer Pluribus for having taught me his unique dialect that I took him out to one of them local cafeteriae. I reported my findings to the American dialect Society by calling from one of the telephone beeth in the place.

Yep, you’ve got it. One tooth, two teeth. One telephone booth, two telephone beeth. Makes things simpler, don’t it?

VOCABULARY

- A -

absolutely [ˈæbs(ə)ˈlu:tli] – комилан; абсолютно, совершенно
accept [ækˈsept] – кабул кардан; принимать, брать предложенное

according to [əˈkɔ:dn̩] – мутобиқан, мувофиқи; в соответствии,
example [igˈza:mpl̩] – мисол, намуна; пример

admiration [ˌædməˈreɪʃ(ə)n] – шавқу завқ; восхищение, восторг
admire [ədˈmaɪə] – ба шавқ омадан, мафтун шудан; восхищаться, любоваться

advice [ədˈvaɪs] – маслиҳат; совет

advise [ədˈvaɪz] – маслиҳат додан; советовать, рекомендовать

affair [əˈfeə] – кор, машғулият; дело, занятие

anxious [ˈæŋ(k)ʃəs] – изтироб; волнение

anyway – чи хел набошад; во всяком случае, как бы то ни было

appearance [əˈpiə(ə)ns] – киёфа, намуди зохири; внешность

appreciate [əˈpri:ʃieɪt] – ба қадри...расидан; ценить, быть благодарным

approach [əˈprəʊtʃ] – наздикшавӣ, расидан; приближение, приход

argue [ˈɑ:gju:] – баҳс (мубоҳиса) кардан; спорить, препираться,

arrange [əˈreɪndʒ] – ба тартиб овардан; приводить в порядок

arrest [əˈrest] – ҳабс кардан; арестовывать, задерживать

artist [ɑ:tɪst] – rassom, художник

as well [æs wel] – инчунин; также, тоже,

ashamed [əˈʃeɪmd] – ҳичолатманд, шарманда; пристыженный,

asleep [əˈsli:p] – хоббурда, хоболуд; спящий

astonishment [əstəˈnɪʃmənt] – тааҷҷуб, ҳайрат; удивление, изумление

attend [əˈtend] – иштирок кардан; ширкат варзидан; посещать;

attendant [əˈtendənt] – ҳамроҳкунанда, вобастакунанда; участник

attentively [əˈtentɪvli] – бодикқат; внимательно

audience [ˈɔ:diənt(s)] – дарсхона; аудитория

audience [ˈɔ:diənt(s)] – тамошобин; зритель

author [ˈɔ:θə] – муаллиф, автор

awful ['ɔ:ful] – дахшатнок, хайбатангез; ужасный, отвратительный

- В -

barn [bɑ:n] – амбор амбар; (сенной) сарай
belt [belt] – тасма, ремень
bepleased [bi: pli:zd] – хурсанд будан; быть довольным
beside [bi'said] – ба гайр аз; кроме
bicycle ['baɪsɪkl] – дучарха, велосипед
Bilchester ['bɪljɪstə] – Билитчестер
birth [bɜ:θ] – таваллуд; рождение, происхождение
blind [blaɪnd] – нобино; очиз; слепой
blood [blʌd] – хун, кровь
box [bɒks] – куттй; коробка; ящик
Bradbury ['brædbəri] – Бредбери (исми хос)
brake [breɪk] – танаффус; перерыв
breathe [bri:ð] – нафас кашидан; дышать; вдыхать
bright [braɪt] – равшан, яркий
bright [braɪt] – тобон; дурахшон; яркий; блестящий; светящийся
brighten ['braɪtn] – дурахшидан, чило додан; придавать блеск
brilliant ['brɪljənt] – алмос, бриллиант
Burt [bɜ:t] – Берт (номи шахс)

- С -

Caleb ['keɪləb] – Кайлеб
calm [kɑ:m] – оромй; тишина, спокойствие
Cameron ['kæm (ə)gən] – Кэмерон
campaign [kæm'peɪn] – маърака; кампания, поход, борьба
capable ['keɪpəbl] – қобилиятнок; способный, одаренный
cargo ['kɑ:gəʊ] – боркаш; груз
carry out ['kæri 'aʊt] – бурдан, то охир расонидан; доводить до конца, выполнять
castle ['kɑ:sl] – қаср, замок, дворец
casualty department ['kæzjuəlti di' rɑ:tmənt] – шуъбаи басту банд; отделение скорой помощи в больнице (для пострадавших от несчастных случаев)

cause [kə:z] – сабаб, асос; причина, основание
 chalk [tʃə:k] – бӯр, мел
 chance – тасодуфӣ, ногаҳонӣ, имконият; случайность, случай, возможность
 cheerful [ˈtʃiəf(ə)l] – зиндадил; бодрый, веселый, радостный
 cheerleader [ˈtʃiə,li:də] – чирлидер
 choice [tʃɔis] – интихоб, выбор
 collar bone [ˈkələ bæʊn] – устухони охӯрак; ключица
 comedy [ˈkɒmədɪ] – мазҳака; комедия
 comfortable [ˈkʌmf(ə)təbl] – мусоид; уютный
 comfortable [ˈkʌmf(ə)təbl] – кулай, удобный, комфортабельный
 commit [kəˈmɪt] – кардан, намудан, иҷро намудан; совершать
 complete [kəmˈpli:t] – пурра, полный
 congratulation [kɒnɪgræfjuˈleɪʃ(ə)n] [kən,græfjuˈleɪʃ(ə)n] – табрик-нома, муборакбод; поздравление
 connect [kəˈnekt] – алоқа, пайвастшавӣ; соединение, связь
 connect [kəˈnekt] – пайваст намудан, соединять; связывать
 construction [kənˈstrʌkʃ(ə)n] – эзоҳдиҳӣ, объяснение
 construction [kənˈstrʌkʃ(ə)n] – сохтор, конструкция
 contain [kənˈteɪn] – дар бар гирифтан; содержать
 cool [ku:l] – хунук; холодность, прохлада; отличный
 corn [kɔ:n] – оби́ла; чуворимакка; мозоль; зерно; зёрнышко
 correspond [kɒrɪˈspɒnd] – мувофиқ будан; соответствовать, отвечать
 count [kaunt] – шумурдан, ҳисоб кардан; считать
 counter [ˈkauntə] – ҳисобкунак; счётчик
 courage [ˈklɪdʒ] – далерӣ, часурӣ; храбрость, мужество, смелость
 courage [ˈklɪdʒ] – часорат; мардонагӣ; мужество; отвага
 cruel [ˈkru:əl] – бераҳм, сангдил, жестокий, бессердечный
 cure [kjʊə] – табобат; лечение
 custom [ˈkʌstəm] – анъана; обычай, традиция

- D -

dad [dæd] – падар; отец
 deal with [di:l] – кор доштан бо..., алоқа доштан бо...; иметь дело с...

death [deθ] – марг; смерть
 decision [di'siʒn] – қарор; решение
 declare [di'kleə] – арз қардан, хабар додан; заявлять, призна-
 вать, объявлять
 defence [di'fen(t)s] – ҳимоя, мудоғиға; защита, оборона
 defend [di'fend] – ҳимоя қардан; защищать
 detailed [di: 'teild] – муфассал; детальный, подробный
 determine [di'tə:mɪn] – муайян қардан, барқарор қардан; опре-
 делять, устанавливать
 devote [di'vəʊt] – хабардор қардан; посвящать
 diet ['daɪət] – парҳез; диета; режим питания
 disappear [disə'piə] – нест шудан, пинҳон шудан; исчезать,
 скрываться
 disarmament [dis'a:məmənt] – беяроққунӣ; демилитаризация;
 разоружение
 display [dis'pleɪ] – намоиш; показ, выставка, экспонат
 distant ['dist(ə)nt] – дур; дальний, далекий,
 doubt [daʊt] – шубҳа, сомнение, неясность
 dream [dri:m] – хоб, орзу; сон, мечта
 dressmaker ['dres,meɪkə] – дӯзанда; портниха
 drop [drɒp] – қатра; капля
 duck [dʌk] – мурғобӣ; утка

- Е -

effect [ɪ'fekt] – таъсир; влияние, эффект
 efficient [ə'fɪʃ(ə)nt] – таъсирбахш; эффективный
 endure [ɪn'dʒʊə] – тоқат қардан; выдержать; вытерпеть
 enthusiasm [ɪn'thju:ziæz(ə)m] – рӯҳбаландӣ; энтузиазм, вооду-
 шевление
 enthusiastic [ɪn'thju:ziæstɪk] – пурзавқ; восторженный
 envelope ['envələʊp] – конверт
 equip [ɪ'kwɪp] – аслиҳадор қардан, ҷиҳозонидан; оборудовать,
 вооружать
 equipment [ɪ'kwɪpmənt] – таҷҳизот; оборудование
 establish [ɪs'tæblɪʃ] – ташкил қардан, сохтан, асос гузоштан;
 создавать, основывать, организовать
 even ['i:vən] – ҳатто; даже

evident [ˈevid(ə)nt] – равшан, ошкор; ясный, очевидный, явный
 evil [ˈi:v(ə)l] – бадӣ; зло, несчастье
 excellent [ˈeks(ə)l(ə)nt] – аъло, бисёр хуб; отличный, превосходный, великолепный
 exclaim [iksˈkleim] – эълон кардан; провозглашать
 excuse [ikˈskju:z] – узрпурсӣ; извинение, оправдание
 exhibition [ˌeksɪˈbɪʃ(ə)n] – намоиш; выставка экспонаты
 expensive [ikˈspensiv] – қимат, қиматбаҳо; дорогой, дорогостоящий
 express [ikˈspres] – ифода кардан; выражать
 expression [ikˈspres(ə)n] – ифода; выражение
 extremely [iksˈtri:mlɪ] – ниҳоят; чрезвычайно, крайне

- F -

face [feɪs] – рӯй; лицо
 faint [feɪnt] – беҳушӣ; обморок
 fair [feə] – ярмарка, базар
 fair [feə] – ҳақиқӣ; справедливый
 favour [ˈfeɪvə] – хайрхоҳӣ, некхоҳӣ; расположение; благо-
 склонность
 fine arts [faɪn ˈɑ:ts] – санъати тасвирӣ; изобразительные искус-
 ства
 fire brigade [faɪə briˈgeɪd] – дастаи сӯхторхомӯшкунӣ; пожарная
 команда
 firm [fɜ:m] – фирма, сахт, твердый
 flashlight [flæʃlaɪt] – фонуси барқӣ; сигнальный огонь
 fond of [fɒnd] – дӯстдор, дилбаста; любящий
 fool [fu:l] – аҳмак; дурак, глупец
 foolish [fu:liʃ] – девона, глупый, слабоумный
 for the sake of [seɪk] – барои чизе ё касе; для (ради) чего-л., ко-
 го-л.
 force [fɔ:s] – қувва; сила, мощь
 forever [ˈfəˈrevə] – доимо, умрбод; навсегда, навеки
 form [fɔ:m] – шакл, намуд, форма
 fortune [ˈfɔ:tju:n] – сарнавишт, тақдир, қисмат; рок, судьба,
 фатум
 Franklin [ˈfræŋklɪn] – Франклин

freedom [ˈfriːdəm] – озодин; свобода,
fulfil [fulˈfil] – амали гардонида, иҷро намудан; выполнять,
осуществлять

- G -

gain [geɪn] – комёбӣ, муваффақият, фоида; доходы, достижения
gifted [ˈɡɪftɪd] – болаёқат; одаренный, талантливый, способ-
ный

give a lead [ɡɪv əˈled] – мисол будан; показывать пример
give up [ˈɡɪv ˈʌp] – партофтан, таслим шудан; бросить, сдавать
glasses [ˈɡlaːsɪz] – айнак; очки
good-looking [ˈɡʊd ˈluːkɪŋ] – зебо; красивый
gramophone [ˈɡræməfəʊn] – граммофон
groan [ɡrəʊn] – нолиш; стон
guess [ɡes] – ёфтан, угадывать, отгадывать
guest [ɡest] – меҳмон; гость, приглашенный
guide [ɡaɪd] – роҳбалад, намоишгар; проводник, гид

- H -

habit [ˈhæbɪt] – одат; привычка
handkerchief [ˈhæŋkətʃɪf] – даструймол, рӯймолча; носовой
платок

handsome [ˈhæn(d)səm] – хушрӯй, барно; красивый
hanky [ˈhæŋki] – даструймол, рӯймолча; носовой платок
Harlem [hɑːləm] – Гарлем (ноҳия дар Нью-Йорк)
harm [hɑːm] – зарар, зиён; вред, ущерб
H-bomb [ˈeɪtbɒm] – бомба
health [helθ] – саломатӣ; здоровье
hell [hel] – дӯзах; ад
helpful [ˈhelpfʊl] – фоидаовар, полезный
heroic [hɪˈrəʊɪk] – қахрамонона; героический, геройский
hit [hit] – задан, бархӯрдан; ударять
honest [ˈɒnɪst] – бовичдон, ҳалол; честный
howl [haʊl] – дод, фарёд; вой, крик
human [ˈhjuːmən] – одам, инсон; человек, человеческое суще-
ство

hush [hʌʃ] – хомӯшӣ; оромӣ; тишина; молчание

- I -

- immediately [ɪ'mi:diəti] – фавран; немедленно
impress ['impres] – таъсир расонидан, нишона гирифтан; де-
лать отпечаток, производить впечатление
in spite of [spaɪt] – ба муқобили, ба чизе нигоҳ накарда; несмо-
тря на, вопреки
including [ɪn'klu:diŋ] – дар бар гирифта, яқоя; включая, вме-
сте с
inhuman [ɪn'hju:mən] – ғайринсонӣ, ноодамӣ; антигуманный,
бесчеловечный
instruct [ɪn'strʌkt] – дастур додан; инструктировать
Instructor [ɪn'strʌktə] – дастурдиҳанда; инструктор
intelligent [ɪn'telɪdʒ(ə)nt] – доно, боақл; умный, знающий
interfere [ɪntə'fiə] – халал расонидан, вайрон кардан, зарар
овардан; мешать, портить, причинять вред
investigate [ɪn'vestigeɪt] – тадқиқот бурдан, санчидан; расследо-
вать, исследовать
iron ['aɪən] – оҳан; железо

- J -

- James Baldwin [dʒeɪmz'bɔ:ldwɪn] – Джеймс Болдвин
journalist ['dʒə:n(ə)list] – рӯзноманигор; журналист
joy [dʒɔɪ] – хурсандӣ; радость, веселье

- L -

- lady ['leɪdi] – бону; леди, дама
lash [læʃ] – задан; ударять, бить, хлестать
leaflet ['li:flət] – варақа; листочек
learned ['lə:nɪd] – омӯхташуда; учёный
lecture ['lektʃə] – лексия; лекция
literature ['lɪ(ə)rəʃə] – адабиёт; литература
lively ['laɪvli] – зинда; живой, оживленный
local [ləʊk(ə)l] – локалӣ, маҳаллӣ; местный, локальный
lovely ['lʌvli] – дӯстдор, меҳрубон; любимый
low [ləʊ] – кӯтоҳ; низкий, невысокий

- М -

maintain [mein'tein] – дастгирӣ кардан, нигоҳ доштан; под-
держивать, сохранять

make manage ['mænidʒ] – роҳбарӣ кардан, идора кардан; руко-
водить, управлять

faces – худро нишон додан, притворяться

make up one's mind [maɪnd] – чамъ кардани фикрҳо, қарор до-
дан; решиться, принять решение

mankind ['mæn'kaɪnd] – одамгарӣ, мардона; человечество,
мужской пол

matron ['meɪtrən] – бону; матрона; замужная женщина

maybe ['meɪbi] – шояд; может быть

meanwhile ['mi:nwaɪl] – ба ҳар ҳол; тем временем; между тем

measure ['meʒə] – андоза; мера; размер

medicine ['medsɪn] – дору, тиб; лекарство, медицина

memorize [mem (ə) raɪz] – ба хотир овардан; запоминать

message ['mesɪdʒ] – хабар; сообщение,

middle-aged [mɪdl 'eɪdʒɪd] – миёнасол; средний лет

mind [maɪnd] – ақида; мнение

moment ['məʊmənt] – ҳолат; маврид; момент, миг

moss [mɒs] – ушна; лишайник, плаун

motto ['mɒtəʊ] – шиор; девиз, лозунг

murder [mɜːdə] – куштор; убийство

murder ['mɜːdə] – куштан; убивать

musician [mjuː'zɪʃ(ə)n] – мусиқанавоз; музыкант

magnificent [mæg'nɪfɪs(ə)nt] – великолепная баланд,

price [praɪs] – нарх; цена

mutter ['mʌtə] – кор; дело

- N -

nasty ['nɑːstɪ] – муқобил; нафратовар; отвратительный

native ['neɪtɪv] – хеш, родной,

native [neɪtɪv] – таҳҷойӣ; муқимӣ; родной; местный

necessary ['nesəs(ə)ri] – зарур, необходимый, нужный

noble ['nəʊbl] – бошараф, олиҳиммат; благородный

notebook ['nəʊtbʊk] – дафтари қайд; записная книжка; тетрадь

notes [nəʊts] – қайдҳо; заметка; запись

- О -

- occasion [ə'keɪʒ(ə)n] – воқеа, маврид; случай, повод
oil [ɔɪl] – раvған, нафт; масло, нефть
operating theatre [ˈo'pəreɪtɪŋ θiətə] – толори амалиёти чарроҳӣ;
операционная комната
outstanding [ˈaʊt'stændɪŋ] – номдор, машхур, выдающийся,
знаменитый
own [aʊn] – хусусӣ, собственный

- Р -

- page [peɪdʒ] – саҳифа, страница
painter [ˈpeɪntə] – рассом, мусаввир; художник, живописец
pair [peə] – як кардан, муттаҳид кардан; соединять по две
pair [peə] – чуфт, пара
pale [peɪl] – сутун, стойка, кол, граница
parachute [ˈpærəʃu:t] – парашют
Parliament [ˈpɑ:ləmənt] – парлумон; парламент
passage [ˈpæsɪdʒ] – гузаргоҳ; проезд; проход
patient [ˈpeɪʃ(ə)nt] – босабр; суботкор; терпеливый, настойчи-
вый
patient [ˈpeɪʃ(ə)nt] – мариз, касал; больной; пациент
perfection [pə'fekʃ(ə)n] – такомул; камолот; совершенство
phonetics [fəu'netiks] – фонетика
physician [fɪ'zɪʃ(ə)n] – духтур; табиб; врач; доктор
playwright [ˈpleɪraɪt] – драматург
representative [ˌrepri'zentətɪv] – намуна; образец,
pleasure [ˈplezə] – ҳаловат бурдан, развлекаться
pleasure [ˈplezə] – лаззат, хурсандӣ, завқ; удовольствие
point [pɔɪnt] – нишона, назар, точка, отметка
poison [ˈpɔɪz(ə)n] – заҳр; отрава; яд
poisoning [ˈpɔɪznɪŋ] – захролуд, отравление; заражение
policeman [pə'li:smən] – корманди полис; полицейский
policy [ˈpəli:si] – сиёсат; политика
Portsmouth [pɔ:tsməθ] – Портсмут (шаҳр дар Англия); (город
в Англии)
power [ˈpaʊə] – қувва; сила, мощность

powerful [ˈpaʊəf(ə)l] – боқувват, тавоно, зўр; сильный, мощный, могучий

prefer [priˈfɜː] – афзал доништан; предпочитать

preliminary [priˈlimin(ə)rɪ] – аввала; нахуст; ознакомительные

priority target [praɪˈɔrəti taːɡɪt] – мақсади аввалиндарача, вази-фаҳои аввалиндарача; приоритетная цель, первоочередная задача

probably [ˈprɒbəbli] – эҳтимол, шояд; вероятно

producer [prəˈdjuːsə] – коргардон; продюсер

pronounce [prəˈnaʊn(t)s] – талаффуз кардан; произносить

proud [praʊd] – мағрур; гордый

public [ˈpʌblik] – ҷамъиятӣ, умумӣ; общественный

purpose [ˈpɜːpəs] – мақсад; цел, намерение

- Q -

quarrel [ˈkwɒrəl] – баҳс кардан, мубоҳиса кардан; спорить, ссориться

quotation [kwəʊˈteɪʃ(ə)n] – иқтибосоварӣ, иқтибос; цитирование, цитата

- R -

rapid [ˈræpɪd] – тез, зуд; быстрый, скорый

rather [ˈrɑːðə] – сахехтар, дурусттар, аниқтар; лучше, правильнее, вернее

recognize [ˈrekəɡnaɪz] – шинохтан, доништан; узнавать, признавать

record [ˈrekɔːd] – сабт; запись

relation [rɪˈleɪʃ(ə)n] – алоқа, муносибат; связь, отношение

relative [ˈrelatɪv] – нисбӣ, нисбатӣ; относительный

remark [rɪˈmaːk] – эрод; замечание

renounce [rɪˈnaʊns] – даст кашидан; отказать

research [rɪˈsɜːʃ] – тадқиқ кардан, таҳқиқ кардан; исследовать

restaurant [ˈrest(ə)rɔːnt] – тарабхона; ресторан

revise [rɪˈvaɪz] – такрор, санҷиш; повторять; сверка, проверять

riches [ˈrɪʃɪz] – бойигарӣ, сарват; богатство

rival [ˈraɪv(ə)l] – рақиб; ҳариф; соперник

roll [rəʊl] – гелондан; катить; везти

roof [ru:f] – бом; крыша
 route [ru:t] – масир, маршрут
 rub [rʌb] – пок кардан, тоза кардан; протирать, натирать
 rubbish ['rʌbɪʃ] – ахлот, хокрӯба; мусор

- S -

sad [sæd] – ғамгин; печальный, грустный
 safe [seɪf] – бехатар; безопасность
 search [sə:tʃ] – кофтан; чувстучӯ кардан; искать
 secret ['si:krit] – сир, роз; секрет, тайна
 sense [sen(t)s] – ҳиссиёт; чувство; ощущение
 separate ['sep(ə)rit] – чудо кардан; отделять
 sergeant ['sɑ:ʒ(ə)nt] – сержант
 shake [ʃeɪk] – чунбондан, афшондан; трясти
 share [ʃeə] – таксим кардан, ҳисса кардан; делить, разделять
 sharp [ʃɑ:p] – бурро, тез, сахт; острый, крутой, резкий
 sheet [ʃi:t] – қоғаз, қоғази чопшуда; лист, печатный лист
 sigh [saɪ] – нафас; вздох
 sign [saɪn] – имзо кардан; подписаться
 silly ['sɪli] – аҳмақона; аблаҳона; глупый; дурацкий
 sincere [sɪn'siə] – содиқона, самимона; искренний, чистосер-
 дечный
 skill [skɪl] – маҳорат; умение; навык
 sneeze [sni:z] – атса задан; чиханье; чихать
 so far [səu 'fɑ:] – то ҳол; до сих пор, пока
 sound [saund] – овоз, садо; звук; шум
 space [speɪs] – чой, кайҳон; место, космос
 special ['speʃ(ə)l] – махсус; особый; специальный
 speciality [speʃɪ'æləti] – ихтисос, специальность; профессия
 spelling ['speliŋ] – талаффуз, произношение
 spirit ['spɪrɪt] – чон, рӯҳ, қалб; душа,
 stain [steɪn] – нишон, моддаи рангкунанда; пятно, красящее
 вещество
 stare [steə] – бодикқат нигоҳ кардан; пристально смотреть
 storm [stɔ:m] – раъду барқ, тундбод, тӯфон; гроза, ураган
 straight [streɪt] – рост, бевосита; прямой

strawberry [ˈstrɔ:b(ə)rɪ] – кулфинай; клубника
 stream [stri:m] – обшор; воды, река
 stretcher [ˈstretʃə] – занбар; тахти равон; носилки
 struggle [ˈstrʌgl] – мубориза бурдан; бороться,
 succeed [səkˈsi:d] – муваффақ шудан, ба мақсад расидан; до-
 биться
 suggest [səˈdʒest] – маслиҳат додан, пешниҳод карадан; совето-
 вать, предлагать
 suit [sju:t] – костюм
 sunflower [ˈsʌnfloʊə] – гули офтобпараст; подсолнечник
 sunrise [ˈsʌnraɪz] – тулӯи офтоб; восход солнца
 sunset [ˈsʌnset] – ғуруби офтоб, нишастани офтоб; заход солн-
 ца, закат
 supply [səˈplaɪ] – захира; запас
 suspect [sʌsˈpekt] – гумон кардан, бадгумон шудан; подозре-
 вать
 suspicious [səsˈpiʃəs] – шубҳанок; подозрительный
 sweep [swi:p] – рӯбидан, пок кардан; мести, сметать, подме-
 тать
 Switzerland [ˈswɪts(ə)lənd] – Шветсария; Швейцария

- Т -

task [tɑ:sk] – масъала, вазифа; задача
 terror [ˈterə] – тарс, ҳарос; ужас, страх
 thermometer [Θəˈmɒmɪtə] – ҳароратсанҷ; термометр; градусник
 thought [θɔ:t] – фикр, ақида; мышление, идея
 threaten [ˈθret(ə)n] – тарсондан, таҳдид кардан; угрожать, гро-
 зить
 title [taɪtl] – ном, сарлавҳа; имя, название
 touch [tʌtʃ] – алоқа; связь
 tragedy [ˈtrædʒədɪ] – фочеа; мудхиш; трагедия
 tremble [ˈtreɪbl] – ларзидан, чунбидан; дрожать, трястись
 trifle [ˈtraɪfl] – майда-чуйда; мелочь
 triumph [ˈtraɪəmf] – ғалаба; победа, триумф
 truck [trʌk] – мошини боркаш; грузовой автомобиль,
 truth [tru:θ] – ҳақиқат; правда
 turn [tə:n] – навбат; очередь

CONTENT

LESSON 1. School Life.....	4
LESSON 2. Health.....	20
LESSON 3. Fight for Peace and Democracy.....	32
LESSON 4. Flight for Peace and Democracy.....	43
LESSON 5. Sports.....	55
LESSON 6. Bernard Shaw.....	69
LESSON 7. Dushanbe.....	81
LESSON 8. Nature and Animals.....	88
LESSON 9. Character and Appearance.....	100
LESSON 10. Hobbies.....	118
LESSON 11. William Shakespear.....	130
LESSON 12. Explorers and Scientists.....	142

**ПАРВОНА ЧАМШЕДОВ, СУРАЙЁХОН ХОЧАЕВА,
САЙМИДДИН ЧОМАТОВ, КИМИЁ АЛИДОДХОНОВА,
ШУҲРАТ КАРИМОВ, ФАЙЗИДДИН БАРОТЗОДА,
СИРОЧИДДИН НАСРУДДИНОВ**

ЗАБОНИ АНГЛИСӢ

**Китоби дарсӣ барои синфи 10-уми
муассисаҳои таҳсилоти умумӣ**

Мухаррирон

Рассом

Мухаррири

техникӣ:

Тарроҳ:

Н. Ҳамрокулова

З. Давлатшоева

Н. Зайниддинов

М. Раҷабов

Ба чоп 00.00.2019 имзо шуд.

Андозаи 60x90 1/16 Коғази офсет. Чопи офсет.

Ќузьи чопӣ 15. Адади нашр 00000 нусха.

Супориши №08/2019

Муассисаи нашриявии «Маориф»-и

Вазорати маориф ва илми Ќумхурии Тоҷикистон

7340243, ш. Душанбе, кӯчаи Аҳмади Дониш, 50.

Тел.: 222-14-66